Introduction

This manual explains the operation of the Navigation System. Please read this manual carefully to ensure proper use. Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times.

The Navigation System is one of the most technologically advanced vehicle accessories ever developed. The system receives satellite signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Using these signals and other vehicle sensors, the system indicates your present position and assists in locating a desired destination.

The navigation system is designed to select efficient routes from your present starting location to your destination. The system is also designed to direct you to a destination that is unfamiliar to you in an efficient manner. The system uses DENSO maps. The calculated routes may not be the shortest nor the least traffic congested. Your own personal local knowledge or “short cut” may at times be faster than the calculated routes.

The navigation system’s database includes Point of Interest categories to allow you to easily select destinations such as restaurants and hotels. If a destination is not in the database, you can enter the street address or a major intersection close to it and the system will guide you there.

The system will provide both a visual map and audio instructions. The audio instructions will announce the distance remaining and the direction to turn in approaching an intersection. These voice instructions will help you keep your eyes on the road and are timed to provide enough time to allow you to maneuver, change lanes or slow down.

Please be aware that all current vehicle navigation systems have certain limitations that may affect their ability to perform properly. The accuracy of the vehicle's position depends on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances. For more information on the limitations of the system, refer to pages 420 through 421.

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

Important information about this manual

For safety reasons, this manual indicates items requiring particular attention with the following marks.

⚠ CAUTION

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

NOTICE

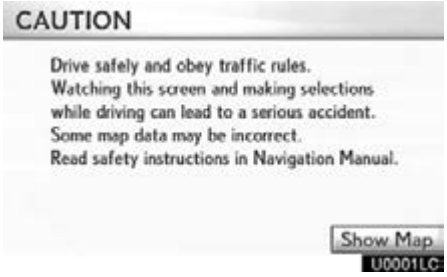
This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your vehicle and its equipment.

INFORMATION

This provides additional information.

This manual explains both hybrid and conventional gasoline vehicle information. Gasoline vehicle information is shown in triangular brackets, for example, “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch.

Safety Instruction



To use this system in the safest possible manner, follow all the safety tips shown below.

This system is intended to assist in reaching the destination and, if used properly, can do so. The driver is solely responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and the safety of your passengers.

Do not use any feature of this system to the extent it becomes a distraction and prevents safe driving. The first priority while driving should always be the safe operation of the vehicle. While driving, be sure to observe all traffic regulations.

Prior to the actual use of this system, learn how to use it and become thoroughly familiar with it. Read the entire Navigation System Owner’s Manual to make sure you understand the system. Do not allow other people to use this system until they have read and understood the instructions in this manual.

For your safety, some functions may become inoperable when driving. Unavailable screen buttons are dimmed. Only when the vehicle is not moving, can the destination and route selection be done.

⚠ CAUTION

- **For safety, the driver should not operate the navigation system while he/she is driving. Insufficient attention to the road and traffic may cause an accident.**
- **While driving, be sure to obey the traffic regulations and maintain awareness of the road conditions. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, route guidance may not have the updated information such as the direction of a one way street.**

While driving, listen to the voice instructions as much as possible and glance at the screen briefly and only when it is safe. However, do not totally rely on voice guidance. Use it just for reference. If the system cannot determine the current vehicle position correctly, there is a possibility of incorrect, late, or non–voice guidance.

The data in the system may occasionally be incomplete. Road conditions, including driving restrictions (no left turns, street closures, etc.) frequently change. Therefore, before following any instruction from the system, look to see whether the instruction can be done safely and legally.

This system cannot warn about such things as the safety of an area, condition of streets, and availability of emergency services. If unsure about the safety of an area, do not drive into it. **Under no circumstances is this system a substitute for the driver's personal judgement.**

Use this system only in locations where it is legal to do so. Some states/provinces may have laws prohibiting the use of video and navigation screens next to the driver.

Table of Contents

Quick guide —
— Remote Touch 10
— Map screen 12
— Registering home 14
— Registering preset destinations 16
— Operation flow: guiding the route 18
— Setting home as the destination 20
Navigation system function index 22
Quick reference (“Start” screen) 24
Quick reference (“Destination” screen) 25
Quick reference (“Setup” screen) 27
Quick reference (“Information” screen) 28
1 Navigation System: Basic Functions
〈Basic information before operation〉
Initial screen 30
How to use the Remote Touch 31
Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation 33
Screen adjustment 36
Help icon 38
Map screen operation 38
Current position display 38
Screen scroll operation 39
Switching the screens 44
Map scale 47
Foot print map 47
Orientation of the map 48
Standard map icons 49
Voice command system 49
Natural speech information 52
Command list 54

2 Navigation System: Destination Search

Destination search 66
Selecting the search area 66
Destination search by Home 68
Destination search by Preset destinations 68
Destination search by “Address” 69
Destination search by “Point of Interest” 73
Destination search by “Destination Assist” 80
Destination search by “Previous Destinations” 80
Destination search by “Address Book” 81
Destination search by “Emergency” 81
Destination search by “Intersection & Freeway” 82
Destination search by “Map” 85
Destination search by “Coordinates” 86
Deleting set destinations 86
Starting route guidance 87

3 Navigation System: Route Guidance

Route guidance screen 92
Typical voice guidance prompts 95
Distance and time to destination 97
Setting and deleting destinations 98
Adding destinations 98
Reordering destinations 98
Deleting destinations 99
Setting route 100
Detour setting 100
Route overview 101
Route preference 103
Pausing and resuming guidance 105
Show on map 106
Display POI* icons 106
Route trace 110

*: Point of Interest

4 Navigation System: Memory Points

Navigation settings 114
Setting up the “Home” 115
Setting up the “Preset Destinations” 117
Setting up the “Address Book” 120
Setting up the “Areas to Avoid” 126
Deleting previous destinations 131

5 Telephone and Information

Telephone (Hands−free system for cellular phone) 134
Enter a Bluetooth® phone 138
Call on the Bluetooth® phone 143
Receive on the Bluetooth® phone 150
Talk on the Bluetooth® phone 150
Fuel consumption 153
Past record 154
Consumption 155
Calendar 156

6 Lexus Enform with Safety Connect

Lexus Enform with Safety Connect−Overview 158
Destination Assist 161
eDestination 164
XM® Sports and Stocks 167
XM NavWeather™ 172
XM® NavTraffic 176
Lexus Insider 178

7 Audio/video System

Quick reference 186
Using your audio/video system 193
Some basics 193
Radio operation 201
Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast) 206
CD changer operation 212
DVD changer operation 226
Bluetooth® audio operation 252
USB memory/iPod operation 260
Audio/video remote controls (steering switches) 268
Rear seat entertainment system features 270
Using the radio 276
Using the DVD player 277
Playing an audio CD/CD text 277
Playing WMA/MP3 discs 278
Playing DVD video/audio 278
Using the video mode 291
Changing other settings 292
Audio/video system operating hints 294

8 Air Conditioning

Automatic air conditioning controls 304

9 Rear View Monitor System

Rear view monitor system 316

10 Side Monitor

Side monitor 322

11 Intuitive Parking Assist

Intuitive parking assist 334

12 Setup

General settings 342
Clock settings 348
Voice settings 350
Navigation settings 353
Detailed navigation settings 354
Telephone settings 363
Volume setting 363
Manage phone 365
Phonebook 373
Setting the phonebook 373
Speed dials setting 382
Deleting call history 388
Setting the voice tag 390
Bluetooth® 394
Details 398
Audio settings 401
Select portable player 401
Setting Bluetooth® audio 404
Vehicle settings 409
Maintenance 409
Vehicle customization 414
Intuitive parking assist setting 415
Other settings 417

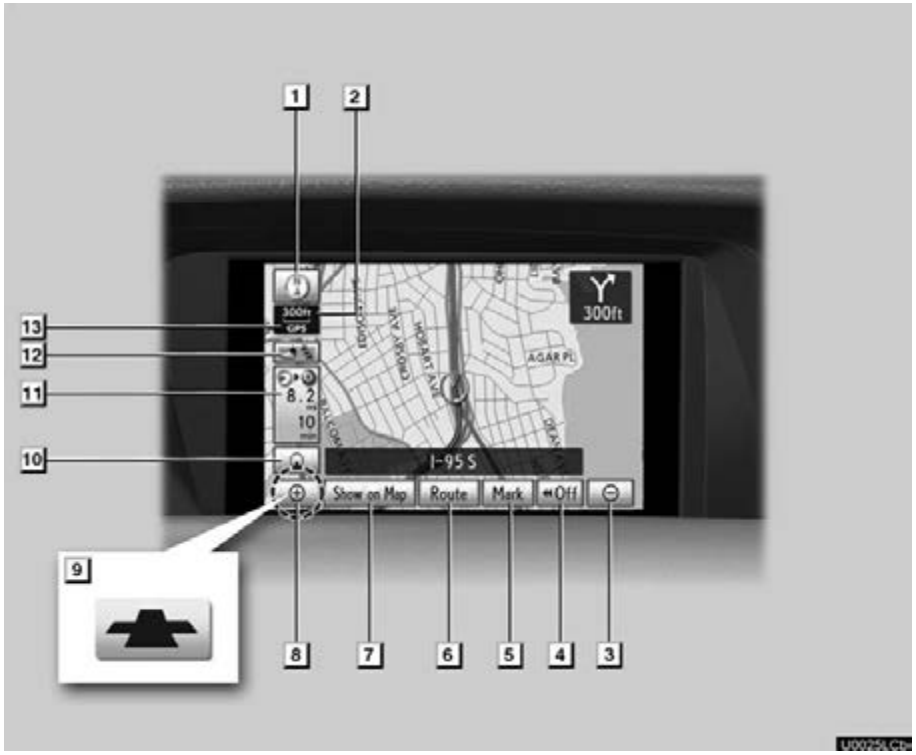
13 Appendix

Limitations of the navigation system 420
Map database information and updates 422
Index 433

Quick guide —
— Remote Touch

No.	Name	Function	Page
1	**“MENU” button**	Push this button to display the “Start” (menu) screen.	24
2	**“∧·∨” button**	Push this button to change the scale of the map and to scroll the list screen.	31, 35, 47
3	**“MAP/VOICE” button**	Push this button to repeat a guidance voice, cancel the map scroll, start guidance and display the current position.	38
4	**Remote Touch knob**	Move this knob in the desired direction to select a function, letter and map screen button.	31
5	**“ENTER” button**	Push this button to enter the selected function, letter or map screen button.	31
6	**“DISP” button**	Push this button to display the “Display” (quality control) screen.	36

— Map screen



No.	Name	Function	Page
1	**North−up or heading−up symbol**	This symbol indicates a map view with north−up or heading−up. Selecting this symbol changes the map orientation.	48
2	**Scale indicator**	This figure indicates the map scale.	47
3	**Zoom out button**	Select this button to reduce the map scale.	47
4	**"◀◀Off"**	Select this button to obtain a broader view. Some of the buttons on the screen are not displayed. They are displayed again by selecting **"On▶▶"**.	359
5	**"Mark"**	Select this button to register the current position or the cursor position as an address book entry.	40
6	**"Route"**	Select this button to change the route.	98, 100

No.	Name	Function	Page
7	**“Show on Map”**	Select this button to browse information about guidance route, to set the Points of Interest to be displayed on the screen, or to record the route.	106, 176
8	**Zoom in button**	Select this button to magnify the map scale.	47
9	**Foot print map button**	Select this button to display the foot print map and the building information.	47
10	**Screen configuration button**	Select this button to change the screen mode.	44
11	**Distance and time to destination**	Displays the distance, the estimated travel time to the destination, and the estimated arrival time at the destination.	97
12	**XM® indicator**	This mark is displayed when XM® information is received.	176
13	**“GPS” mark (Global Positioning System)**	Whenever the vehicle is receiving signals from the GPS, this mark is displayed.	420

— Registering home

1	Push the “MENU” button.

2	Select “Destination” and push the “ENTER” button.

3	Select “Go Home” and push the “ENTER” button.

If home has not been registered, you can register it by selecting **“Go Home”**.

4	Select “Yes” and push the “ENTER” button.

5 **There are 4 different methods to search your home.**

See “Destination search” on page 66.

6 **Select “Enter” and push the “ENTER” button.**

The “Edit Home” screen is displayed.

7 **Select “OK” and push the “ENTER” button.**

Registration of home is complete.

You can also register home by selecting **“Setup”**. (See “ (a) Registering home” on page 115.)

You can change the name, location, phone number and icon. (See “ (b) Editing home” on page 116.)

— Registering preset destinations

1	Push the “MENU” button.

2	Select “Destination” and push the “ENTER” button.

3	Select one of the preset destination buttons and push the “ENTER” button.

You can set a preset destination to any preset destination button that has not yet been set.

4	Select “Yes” and push the “ENTER” button.

5 **There are 4 different methods to search preset destinations.**

See “Destination search” on page 66.

6 **Select “Enter” and push the “ENTER” button.**

The “Edit Preset Destination” screen is displayed.

7 **Select “OK” and push the “ENTER” button.**

Registration of preset destinations is complete.

You can also register preset destinations by selecting **“Setup”**.
(See “ (a) Registering preset destinations” on page 118.)

You can change the name, location, phone number and icon. (See “ (b) Editing preset destinations” on page 119.)

The registered points can be used on the “Destination” screen. (See “ — Destination search by Preset destinations” on page 68.)

— Operation flow: guiding the route

1	**Push the “MENU” button.**

2	**Select “Destination” and push the “ENTER” button.**

3	**There are 11 different methods to search destinations.**

See “Destination search” on page 66.

4	**Select “Go to ⊙” and push the “ENTER” button.**

The navigation system performs a search for the route.

5	**Select “OK” and push the “ENTER” button, and start driving.**

Routes other than the one recommended can also be selected. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

6	**Guidance to the destination is given via voice and on the guidance screen.**

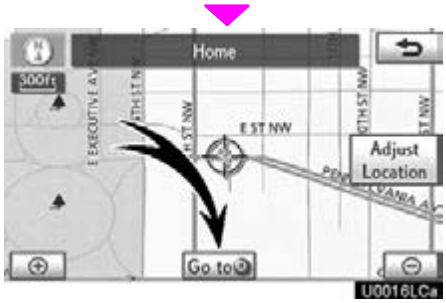
— Setting home as the destination

1	Push the “MENU” button.

2	Select “Destination” and push the “ENTER” button.

3	Select “Go Home” and push the “ENTER” button.

“Go Home” can be used if your home has been registered. (To register “Home”, see “ (a) Registering home” on page 115.)



4	Select “Go to ⊙” and push the “ENTER” button.

The navigation system performs a search for the route.

5	**Select “OK” and push the “ENTER” button, and start driving.**

Routes other than the one recommended can also be selected. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

6	**Guidance to the destination is given via voice and on the guidance screen.**

Navigation system function index

⟨*Map*⟩

Displaying maps	Page
Viewing the map screen	12
Displaying the current vehicle position	38
Viewing the current position vicinity map	39
Changing the scale	47
Changing the map orientation	48
Displaying Point of Interest	106
Displaying the estimated travel/arrival time to the destination	97
Selecting the dual map screen	44
Viewing foot print map	47
Deleting map screen buttons	359
Searching destination	**Page**
Searching the destination (by home, Point of Interest, phone #, etc.)	66
Changing the selected search area	66
Operating the map location of the selected destination	87

⟨*Route guidance*⟩

Before starting route guidance	Page
Setting the destination	87
Viewing alternative routes	87
Starting route guidance	87
Before starting or during route guidance	**Page**
Viewing the route	87
Adding destinations	98
Changing the route	100
Displaying the estimated travel/arrival time to the destination	97

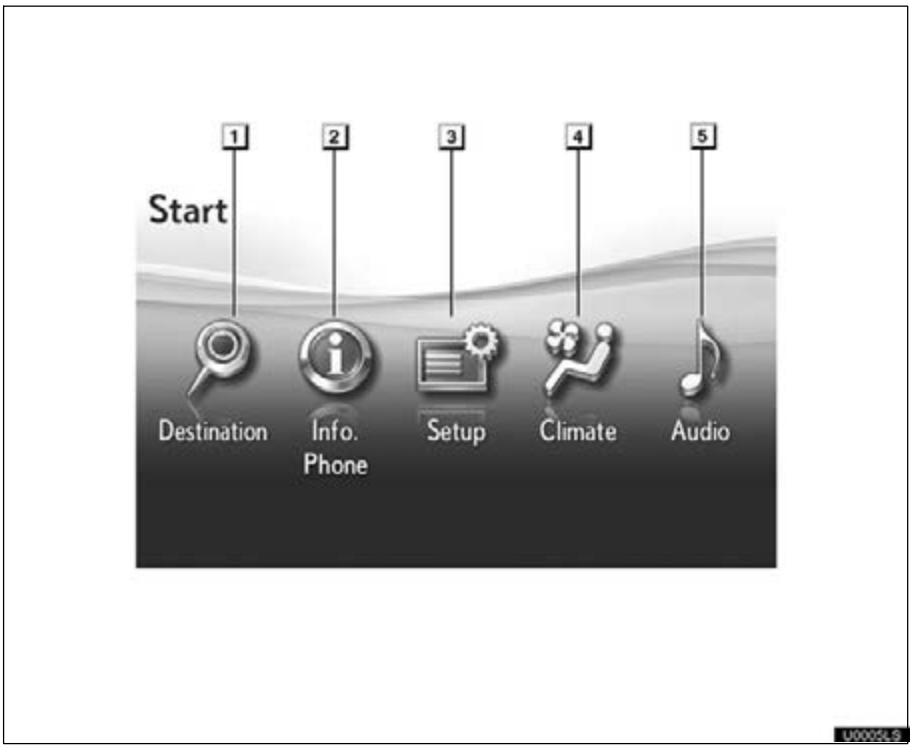
During route guidance	Page
Pausing route guidance	105
Adjusting route guidance volume	352
Deleting the destination	86, 99
Displaying the entire route map	101

〈*Useful functions*〉

Address book	Page
Registering your own address book entries	120
Marking icons on the map	122
Information	**Page**
Displaying vehicle maintenance	409
Displaying the calendar	156
Hands−free system (for cellular phone)	**Page**
Initiating Bluetooth®	138
Making a call on the Bluetooth® phone	143
Receiving a call on the Bluetooth® phone	150
Voice command system	**Page**
Operating the system with your voice	49

Quick reference (“Start” screen)

To display the “Start” screen, push the **“MENU”** button on the Remote Touch.



1 “Destination”

You can use one of 10 different methods to search your destination. 25, 65

2 “Info./Phone”

Select this button to operate the hands–free system and display fuel economy information, etc. 28, 133

3 “Setup”

Select this button to adjust settings of the navigation, audio and hands–free systems, etc. 27, 341

4 “Climate”

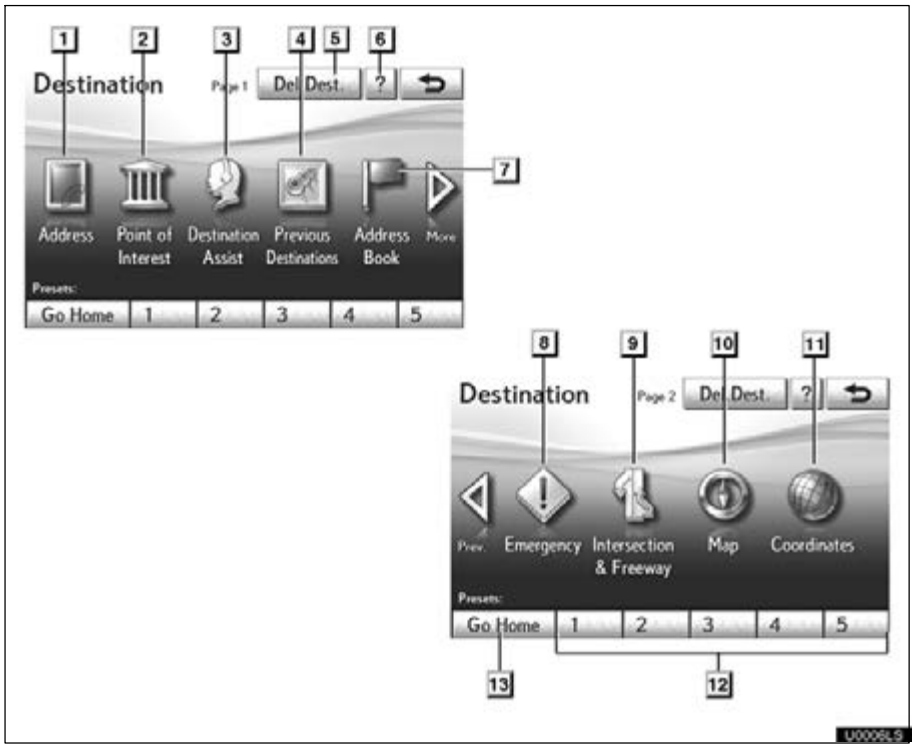
Select this button to operate the air conditioning system. 303

5 “Audio”

Select this button to operate the audio system. 185

Quick reference (“Destination” screen)

The “Destination” screen allows you to search for a destination. To display the “Destination” screen, push the **“MENU”** button and select **“Destination”**.



1 “Address”

A house number and the street address can be input by using the input keys. 69

2 “Point of Interest”

Select one of the many Points of Interest that have already been stored in the system’s database. 73

3 “Destination Assist”

Provides you with live assistance finding destinations via the Lexus Enform response center 161

4 “Previous Destinations”

A destination can be selected from any of the last 100 previously set destinations and from the previous starting point. 80

5 “Del. Dest.”

Set destinations can be deleted. 86

6 “?”

Function help for the “Destination” screen can be viewed on this screen. 38

7 "Address Book"

The desired location can be selected from a registered entry in the "Address book". (To register address book entries, see "(a) Registering address book entries" on page 121.) 81

8 "Emergency"

One of the four categories of emergency service points that are already stored in the system's database can be selected. 81

9 "Intersection & Freeway"

The names of two intersecting streets or a freeway (interstate) entrance or exit can be entered. This is helpful if only the general vicinity, not the specific address, is known. 82

10 "Map"

A destination can be selected simply by selecting the location on the displayed map. 85

11 "Coordinates"

A destination can be set using latitudes and longitudes as coordinates. 86

12 Preset destination buttons

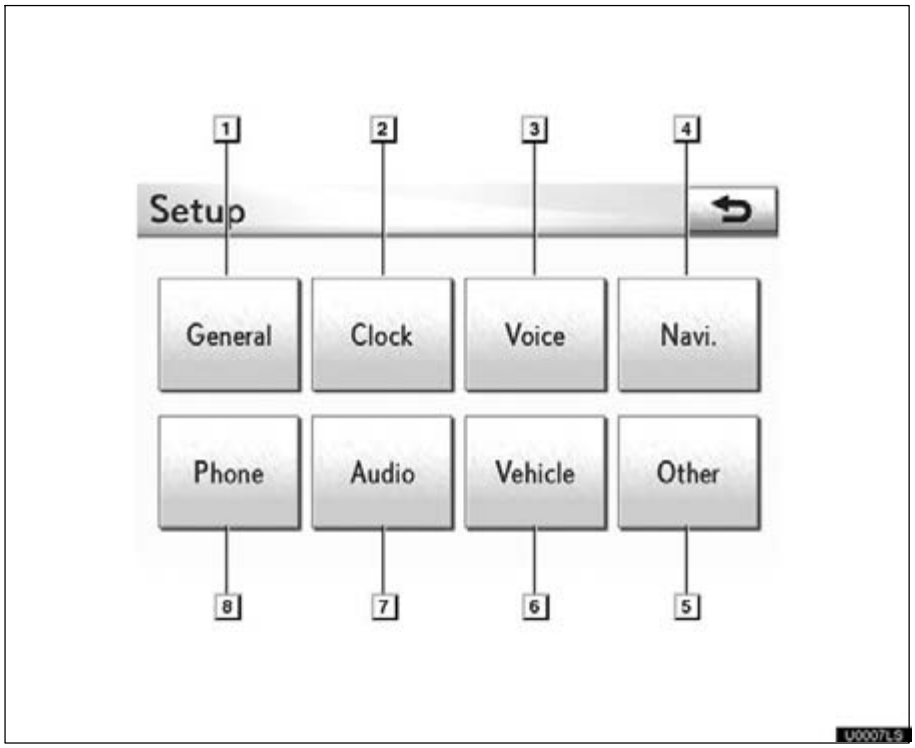
One of 5 preset destination points can be selected by selecting the screen directly. If a preset destination point has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear. To use this function, it is necessary to set the "preset destination". (To register a "Preset Destination", see "(a) Registering preset destinations" on page 118.) 68

13 "Go Home"

A personal home address can be selected without entering the address each time. If "Home" has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear. To use this function, it is necessary to set a "Home" address. (To register "Home", see "(a) Registering home" on page 115.) 68

Quick reference (“Setup” screen)

The items shown on the “Setup” screen can be set. To display the “Setup” screen, push the **“MENU”** button and select **“Setup”**.



1 **“General”**

Settings are available for language selection, operation sounds, automatic screen change, etc. 342

2 **“Clock”**

Used for changing settings for time zones, daylight saving time, etc. 348

3 **“Voice”**

Voice guidance can be set. 350

4 **“Navi.”**

Settings are available for average cruising speed, displayed screen contents, POI icon categories, etc. 353

5 **“Other”**

Settings are available for Lexus Insider, XM® Sports and Stocks. 417

6 **“Vehicle”**

Settings are available for vehicle information such as maintenance information. 409

7 **“Audio”**

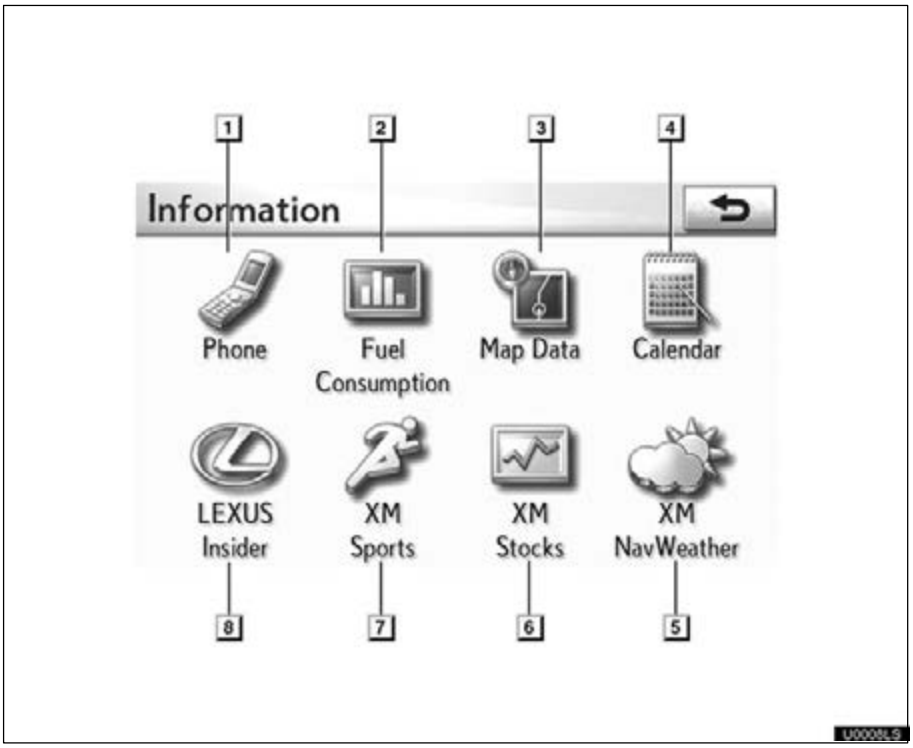
Settings are available for portable audio devices, Bluetooth® audio devices etc. 401

8 **“Phone”**

Bluetooth® phones and phone numbers can be registered, and the receiver volume can be adjusted. 363

Quick reference (“Information” screen)

This screen can be used to display the calendar and information on operation of the hands–free phone, etc. To display the “Information” screen, push the **“MENU”** button and select **“Info./Phone”**.



1 **“Phone”**

To view hands free phone information. 138

2 **“Fuel Consumption”**

Fuel consumption is displayed. 153

3 **“Map Data”**

Displays information regarding the map data disc version or coverage area. 431

4 **“Calendar”**

To view calendar. 156

5 **“XM NavWeather”**

To display the “XM NavWeather” screen. 172

6 **“XM Stocks”**

To display the “XM Stocks” screen. 167

7 **“XM Sports”**

To display the “XM Sports” screen. 167

8 **“LEXUS Insider”**

To display the “LEXUS Insider” screen. 178

SECTION 1

NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

Basic information before operation

- Initial screen 30
- How to use the Remote Touch 31
- Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation 33
- Screen adjustment 36
- Help icon 38
- **Map screen operation** 38
  - Current position display 38
  - Screen scroll operation 39
  - Switching the screens 44
  - Map scale 47
  - Foot print map 47
  - Orientation of the map 48
  - Standard map icons 49
- **Voice command system** 49
  - Natural speech information 52
  - Command list 54

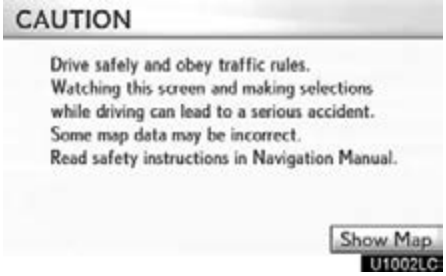
Initial screen

When the “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.

⚠ CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped with the hybrid system operating <the engine running>, always apply the parking brake for safety.

After a few seconds, the “CAUTION” screen will be displayed.



After about 5 seconds, the “CAUTION” screen automatically switches to the map screen. When selecting **“Show Map”** or pushing the **“MAP/VOICE”** button, the map screen is displayed.

- **Maintenance information**

This system informs about when to replace certain parts or components and shows dealer information (if registered) on the screen.

When the vehicle reaches a previously set driving distance or date specified for a scheduled maintenance check, the “Information” screen will be displayed when the navigation system is in operation.

To disable this screen, select “Do Not Display This Message Again”. This screen goes off if the screen is not operated for several seconds.

To prevent this information screen from being displayed again, select **“Do Not Display This Message Again”**.

To register “Maintenance information”, see “—Maintenance” on page 409.

How to use the Remote Touch

This navigation system can be operated by the Remote Touch when the “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

A pointer is shown on the screen. Use the Remote Touch knob to move the pointer and select the buttons on the screen.

To select a button on the screen, place the pointer on top of the button and then push the **“ENTER”** button on the Remote Touch. Once a button has been selected, the screen will change.

When the pointer moves close to a button, it will be automatically pulled onto that button. The strength of this pull can be adjusted. (See page 346.)

The pointer will disappear from the screen if it is not moved for 6 seconds. Operation of the Remote Touch knob will cause the pointer to reappear.

Pointer shape can be changed. (See page 346.)

: Change to an arrow.

: Change to a left hand.

: Change to a right hand.

None: Display of the pointer can be turned off. (Even if display of the pointer is turned off, the pointer will appear on the map screen as "+".)

Push the "∧" button on the Remote Touch to zoom in on the map screen and "∨" to zoom out. These buttons can also be used to scroll up and down on list screens.

Push the **"MENU"** button to set a destination or adjust settings for the audio system, air conditioning system, etc.

You can return to the map screen by pushing the **"MAP/VOICE"** button.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not allow fingers, fingernails or hair to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause an injury.**
- **Be careful when touching the Remote Touch in extreme temperatures as it may become very hot or cold due to the temperature inside the vehicle.**

NOTICE

- ***Do not allow the Remote Touch to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes as doing so may cause it to change color, emit a strange odor or stop functioning.***
- ***Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact as the knob may bend or break off.***
- ***Do not allow coins, contact lenses or other such items to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause it to stop functioning.***
- ***Items of clothing may rip if they become caught on the Remote Touch knob.***
- ***If your hand or any object is on the Remote Touch knob when the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode, the Remote Touch knob may not operate properly.***

INFORMATION

Under extremely cold conditions, the Remote Touch knob may react slowly.

Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation

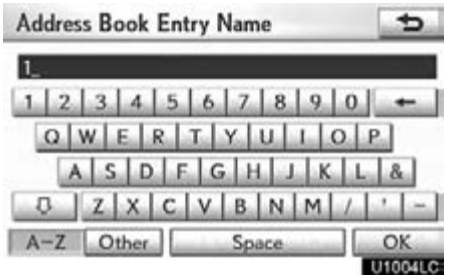
When searching for an address or a name, or entering, letters and numbers can be input via the screen.

INFORMATION

Keyboard layout can be changed. (See page 344.)

- **To input letters and numbers**

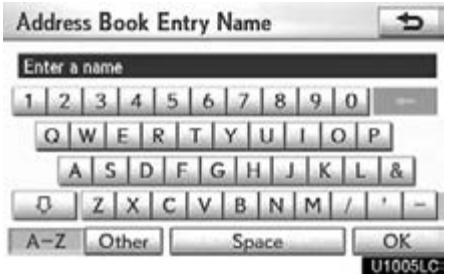
To display the alphabet keys, select **"A–Z"**.



Enter letters by selecting the keys directly.

: Selecting this button erases one letter. By holding this button, letters will continue to be erased.

On certain letter entry screens, letters can be entered in upper or lower case.

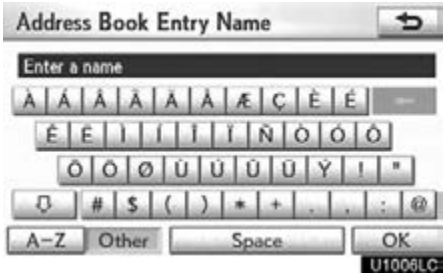


: To enter in lower case.

: To enter in upper case.

- **To input symbols**

To display symbol keys, select **"Other"**.



Enter symbols by selecting the symbol keys directly.

: Selecting this button erases one letter. By holding this button, letters will continue to be erased.

- **To display the list**

To search for an address or a name, select **"OK"**. Matching items from the database are listed even if the entered address or name is incomplete.

If the number of matches is five or less, the list is displayed without selecting **"OK"**.

INFORMATION

The number of matching items is shown to the right side of the screen. If the number of matching items is more than 999, the system displays "∗∗" on the screen.

- **List screen operation**

When a list is displayed, use the appropriate button to scroll through the list.

To shift to the next or previous page.

Select or to scroll through the displayed list.

This expresses a displayed screen position.

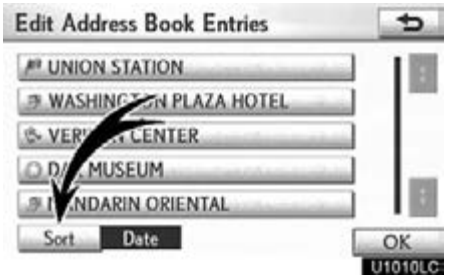
If appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Select to scroll to the end of the name.

Select to scroll to the beginning of the name.

INFORMATION
The "∧" and "∨" buttons on the Remote Touch can be used to scroll up and down on list screens.

- **Sorting**

The order of a list displayed on the screen can be rearranged.



1. Select "Sort".

2. Select the desired sorting criteria.

Sorting criteria are as follows:

"Distance": To sort in the order of distance from your current location.

"Date": To sort in the order of the date.

"Category": To sort in the order of the category.

"Icon": To sort in the order of the icons.

"Name": To sort in order by name.

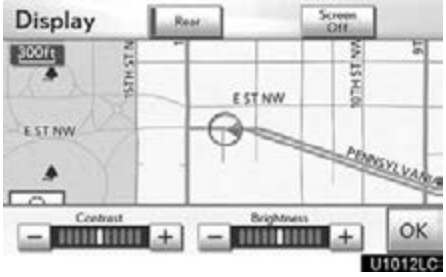
Screen adjustment

You can adjust the contrast, brightness, color and tone of the screen. You can also turn the display off, and change the screen to either day or night mode.

- **Contrast, brightness, color and tone adjustment**

The contrast, brightness, color and tone of the screen can be adjusted depending on the brightness of your surroundings. You can also turn the display off.

1. Push the "DISP" button.



Contrast and brightness adjustment

2. Select the desired button to adjust contrast and brightness.

"Contrast" "+": Strengthens the contrast of the screen.

"Contrast" "–": Weakens the contrast of the screen.

"Brightness" "+": Brightens the screen.

"Brightness" "–": Darkens the screen.

3. After adjusting the screen, select "OK".

The screen goes off when **"Screen Off"** is selected. To turn the display screen back on, push the **"DISP"** button again.

INFORMATION
When you do not select any button on the "Display" screen for 20 seconds, the previous screen will be displayed.

Color and tone adjustment

1. Select the desired button to adjust color and tone.

You can adjust the color and the tone while the DVD video, DVD audio and video CD are being played.

"Color" "R": Strengthens the red color of the screen.

"Color" "G": Strengthens the green color of the screen.

"Tone" "+": Strengthens the tone of the screen.

"Tone" "–": Weakens the tone of the screen.

2. After adjusting the screen select "OK".

If your vehicle is equipped with the rear seat entertainment system, the rear screen turns on or off when **"Rear"** is selected.

The screen goes off when **"Screen Off"** is selected. To turn the display screen back on, push the **"DISP"** button again.

INFORMATION
When you do not select any button on the "Display" screen for 20 seconds, the previous screen will be displayed.

- **Changing between day mode and night mode**

Depending on the position of the headlight switch, the screen changes to day mode or night mode.

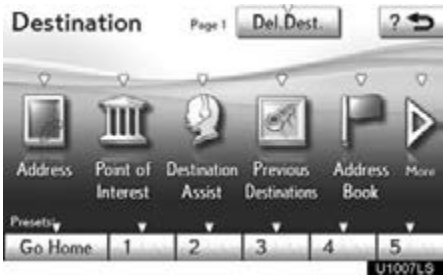
To display the screen in day mode even with the headlight switch on, select "Day Mode" on the adjustment screen for brightness and contrast control.

If the screen is set in day mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized even with the hybrid system <engine> turned off.

Help icon

When ? appears on the screen, an explanation of the function can be displayed.

1. Select ? .



2. Select the button of the desired function.

Map screen operation — — Current position display

When starting the navigation system, the current position is displayed first.

This screen displays the current vehicle position and a map of the surrounding local area.

The current vehicle position mark (1) appears in the center or bottom center of the map screen.

A street name will appear on the bottom of the screen, depending on the scale of the map (2).

You can return to this map screen that shows your current position at any time from any screen by pushing the **"MAP/VOICE"** button.

While driving, the current vehicle position mark is fixed on the screen and the map moves.

The current position is automatically set as the vehicle receives signals from the GPS (Global Positioning System). If the current position is not correct, it is automatically corrected after the vehicle receives signals from the GPS.

INFORMATION

- ***After 12−volt battery disconnection, or on a new vehicle, the current position may not be correct. As soon as the system receives signals from the GPS, the correct current position is displayed.***
- ***To correct the current position manually, see page 360.***

— Screen scroll operation

When any point on the map is selected, that point moves to the center of the screen and is shown by the cursor mark (1).

Use the scroll feature to move the desired point to the center of the screen for looking at a point on the map that is different from the current position of the vehicle.

To scroll over the map, place the pointer in a position near the desired destination and then press and hold the **"ENTER"** button. The map will continue scrolling in that direction until the button is released.

A street name, city name, etc. of the selected point will be shown, depending on the scale of the map (2). Distance from the current position to ⌖ will also be shown (3).

After the screen is scrolled, the map remains centered at the selected location until another function is activated. The current vehicle position mark will continue to move along your actual route and may move off the screen. When the **"MAP/VOICE"** button is pushed, the current vehicle position mark returns to the center of the screen and the map moves as the vehicle proceeds along the designated route.

INFORMATION
When the scroll feature is used, the current vehicle position mark may disappear from the screen. Move the map with a scroll again or push the "MAP/VOICE" button to return to the current vehicle position map location display.

- **To set the cursor position as a destination**

A specific point on the map can be set as a destination using the scroll function.

Select "Enter ⦿".

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

- **To register the cursor position as an address book entry**

Address book entry registration enables easy access to a specific point.

Select "Mark".

When you select **"Mark"**, the following screen appears for a few seconds, and then the map screen returns.

The registered point is shown by on the map.

To change the icon or name, etc., see " (b) Editing address book entries" on page 122.

Up to 100 address book entries can be registered. If there is an attempt to register more than 100 address book entries, an error message will appear.

- **To see information about the icon where the cursor is set**

To display information about an icon, set the cursor on it.

POI INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a POI icon, the name and **"Info."** are displayed at the top of the screen.

Select "Info.".

Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

If **"Enter ⦿"** is selected, the position of the cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a set destination, **"Go to ⦿"** and **"Add to Route"** are displayed.

"Go to ⦿": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

"Add to Route": To add a destination.

To register this POI as an address book entry, select **"Mark"**. (See page 121.)

If is selected, the registered telephone number can be called.

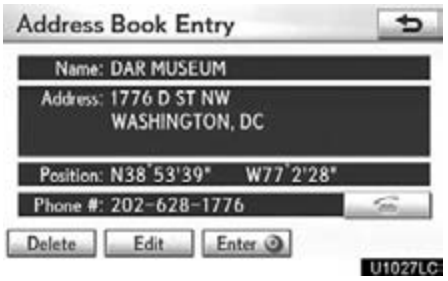
INFORMATION

The desired Point of Interest can be displayed on the map screen. (See " — Display POI icons" on page 106.)

ADDRESS BOOK ENTRY INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on an address book entry icon, the name and **"Info."** are displayed at the top of the screen.

Select "Info.".



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

If **"Enter ⦿"** is selected, the position of the cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a set destination, **"Go to ⦿"** and **"Add to Route"** are displayed.

"Go to ⦿": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

"Add to Route": To add a destination.

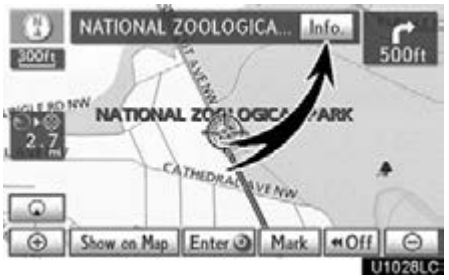
To edit an address book entry, select **"Edit"**. (See "(b) Editing address book entries" on page 122.)

To delete an address book entry, select **"Delete"**.

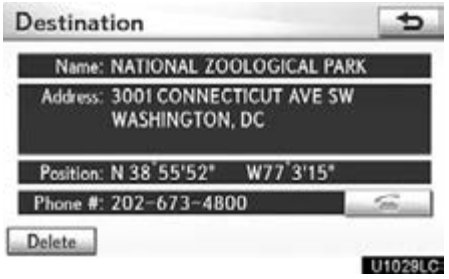
If is selected, the registered telephone number can be called.

DESTINATION INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a destination icon, the name and **"Info."** are displayed on the top of the screen.



Select "Info.".



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

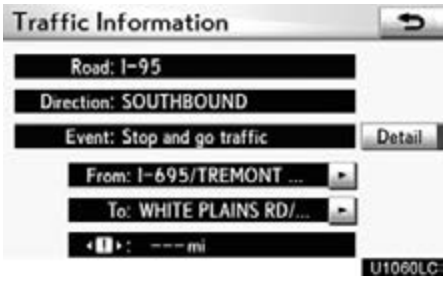
To delete a destination, select **"Delete"**.

If is selected, the registered telephone number can be called.

XM® NavTraffic TEXT INFORMATION

When you select the XM® NavTraffic icon on the map, the XM® NavTraffic info. bar will appear on the upper part of the screen.

Select "Info.".

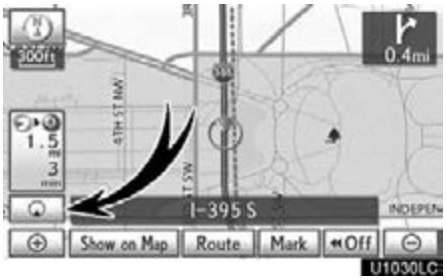


Traffic information is displayed on the screen.

Select **"Detail"** to display detailed traffic event information.

— Switching the screens

Any one of the screen configurations can be selected .



1. Select this button to display the following screen.

2. To select the desired screen configuration, select one of the following buttons.

Depending on the conditions, certain screen configuration buttons cannot be selected.

Single Map :
To display the single map screen. (See page 45.)

Dual Map :
To display the dual map screen. (See page 46.)

Compass :
To display the compass mode screen. (See page 46.)

Freeway :
To display the freeway screen. (See page 92.)

Turn List :
To display the turn list screen. (See page 94.)

Arrow :
To display the arrow screen. (See page 94.)

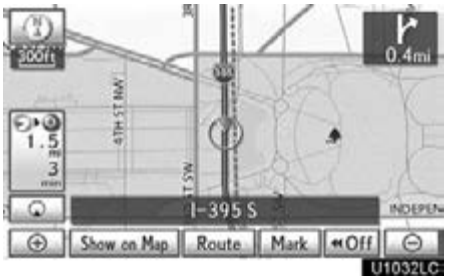
Intersection :
To display the intersection guidance screen or the guidance screen on the freeway. (See page 93.)

- **Screen configurations**

SINGLE MAP

This is a regular map screen.

While on a different screen, selecting Single Map will display the single map screen.



The screen shows the single map.

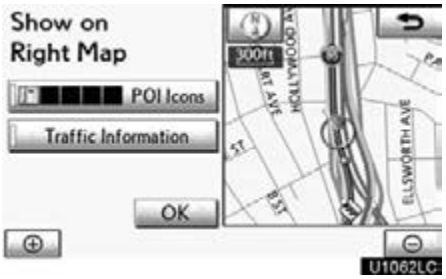
DUAL MAP

A map can be displayed split in two.

While on a different screen, selecting Dual Map will display the dual map screen.

The screen shows the dual map. The map on the left is the main map.

The right side map can be edited by selecting any specific point on the right side map.



This screen can perform the following procedures:

1. Changing the map scale
2. Displaying the POI icon
3. Show XM® NavTraffic Info. (See page 176.)
4. Changing the orientation of the map

Select "OK" when you complete editing.

The screen returns to the dual map screen.

COMPASS MODE

Current vehicle position is indicated with a compass.

While on a different screen, selecting Compass will display the compass mode screen.

Information about the destination and current position, as well as a compass, is displayed on the screen.

The destination mark is displayed in the direction of the destination. When driving refer to the longitude and latitude coordinates, and the compass, to make sure that your vehicle is headed in the direction of the destination.

INFORMATION

When the vehicle travels out of the coverage area, the guidance screen changes to the compass mode screen.

— Map scale

Select ⊕ or ⊖ to change the scale of the map display. The scale bar and indicator at the bottom of the screen indicates the map scale menu. The scale range is 150 feet (50 m) to 250 miles (400 km).

Select ⊕ or ⊖ until the scale bar changes normally. By continuing to select the button, the scale bar changes smoothly.

The scale of the map display can be changed by selecting the scale bar directly. It is not available while driving.

The map scale is displayed under the north–up symbol or heading–up symbol at the top left of the screen.

INFORMATION

- ***Push the "∧" button on the Remote Touch to zoom in on the map screen and "∨" to zoom out.***
- ***When the map scale is at the maximum range of 250 miles (400 km), ⊖ is not shown. When the map scale is at the minimum range of 150 feet (50 m), ⊕ is not shown. In areas where the foot print map is available the map scale changes from ⊕ to when at the minimum range.***

— Foot print map

For the area which is covered by the foot print map (Some areas in the following cities: Detroit, Chicago, N.Y., L.A), you can switch to the foot print map on a scale of 75 feet (25 m).

- **To switch to the foot print map**

⊕ changes into when the map is scaled down to 150 feet (50 m).

To display the foot print map, select .

To delete the foot print map display, select ⊖.

INFORMATION

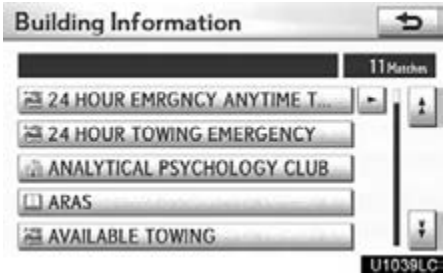
- ***If the map or the current position is moved to the area which is not covered by the foot print map, the screen scale automatically changes to 150 feet (50 m).***
- ***On the foot print map, a one way street is displayed by .***
- ***It is not possible to perform scrolling on the foot print map while driving.***

Building footprints in the database were created and provided by MAPMASTER.

- **To display building information**

Information is available only for buildings for which information is recorded on the map disc.

Select "Info." while the foot print map is displayed.



Details of POIs in some buildings may be displayed.

For detailed POI information, select the building name. You can see details of the selected POIs.

— Orientation of the map

The orientation of the map can be changed from North−up to Heading−up by selecting the orientation symbol at the top left of the screen.

Select **or** **.**

▶ **North−up screen**

▶ **Heading−up screen**

North−up symbol

Regardless of the direction of vehicle travel, North is always up.

Heading−up symbol

The direction of vehicle travel is always up. A red arrow indicates North.

— Standard map icons

Icon	Name
	Island
	Park
	Industry
	Business facility
	Airport
	Military
	University
	Hospital
	Stadium
	Shopping mall
	Golf

Voice command system—

The voice command system enables you to operate the navigation system, audio system and hands–free system by giving a command.

1. Push the talk switch.

After a beep sounds, the “Voice Menu” screen is displayed.

INFORMATION
Voice guidance for the voice command system can be skipped by pushing the talk switch.

2. After a beep sounds, say the command of your choice.

Voice commands are marked with .

Some commonly used commands are displayed on the screen. Speak the commands as displayed on the screen.

If you want to check the all command list, say ***"Command list"*** to display the command list screen. (See "—Command list" on page 54.)

3. Following voice guidance, say the command displayed on the screen.

If a desired outcome is not shown, or if no choices are available, say ***"Go back"*** or select **"Go Back"** to return to the previous screen.

To cancel voice command recognition, say ***"Cancel"***, select **"Cancel"**, or push and hold the talk switch.

If the navigation system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, please push the talk switch and try again.

If a voice command cannot be recognized within 6 seconds, the voice guidance system will say "Pardon?" ("Command not recognized." will be displayed on the screen) and voice command reception will restart.

If a voice command cannot be recognized two consecutive times, the voice guidance system will say "Paused. To restart voice recognition, push the talk switch.", then be suspended.

▶ **Microphone**

It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.

INFORMATION

- ***Wait for the confirmation beep before speaking a command.***
- ***Voice commands may not be recognized if :***
  - ***Spoken too quickly***
  - ***Spoken at a low or high volume***
  - ***The windows or sunroof are open***
  - ***Passengers are talking while voice commands are spoken***
  - ***The air conditioning speed is set high***
  - ***The command is not correct or clear.***

    Note that certain words, accents, or speech patterns may be difficult for the system to recognize.
  - ***There are some noises such as wind noise, etc.***

- **Voice command example: Searching for a route to your home.**

1. **Push the talk switch.**
2. **Say *"Go home"*.**

If a home address is not registered, the voice guidance system will say "Your home is not set" and you will be prompted to enter a home address. (See page 115.)

When the voice command is recognized, a map of the area around your home is displayed.

3. **Select "Enter" or say *"Enter"*, and the system starts searching for a route to your home.**

To return to the "Voice Menu" screen, say ***"Go back"*** or select **"Go Back"**.

Select **"Cancel"** or say ***"Cancel"***, and the voice command system will be canceled.

— Natural speech information (English only)

Due to natural language speech recognition technology, this system enables recognition of a command when spoken naturally. However, the system cannot recognize every variation of each command. In some situations, it is possible to omit the command for the procedure and directly state the desired operation.

- **Voice recognition top screen expression examples**

Command	Expression examples
Go Home	*Take me home.* *Let's go home.*
Destination	*I'd like to set a destination.*
Phone	*I'd like to make a call.* *I need to use the phone.* *Bring up the phone menu.*
Audio	*Audio menu, please.*
Information	*Let me see the information menu.* *Give us the information menu, please.*
Command List	*Show me the voice command list.*

- **Expression examples for each function**

In some situations, It is possible to omit a command for each procedure and to say the desired operation directly.

EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Destination" SCREEN

Normal command recognition —

Destination>Point of Interest>Near Here>Gas> The gas stations near the current location will be listed.

Natural speech recognition —

Destination> ***What gas stations are nearby?>*** The gas stations near the current location will be listed.

INFORMATION

Natural speech example:

"Where's the nearest Mexican restaurant?"

"Where is the closest ATM?"

EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Phone Menu" SCREEN (when making a call using a phonebook)

Normal command recognition —

Phone>Dial by Name>Bob>mobile> The phone number will be displayed.

Natural speech recognition —

*Phone>**Call to Bob on his mobile.>*** The phone number will be displayed.

INFORMATION

Natural speech example:

"Get me Rob Brown on the phone."

"Please place a call to John on his mobile."

EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Phone Menu" SCREEN (when making a call by saying a phone number)

Normal command recognition —

Phone>Dial by Number>123−456−789> The phone number will be displayed.

Natural speech recognition —

*Phone>**Call to 123−456−789.>*** The phone number will be displayed.

INFORMATION

The above mentioned command for making a call can also be recognized on the voice recognition top screen.

Natural speech example:

"I'd like to place a call to 123−456−789."

"I want to buzz 123−456−789, please."

EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Information Menu" SCREEN

Normal command recognition —

Information>XM Nav Weather>Los Angeles, California> The weather information will be displayed.

Natural speech recognition —

*Information>**Give me a weather report for Los Angeles, California.>*** The weather information will be displayed.

INFORMATION

Natural speech example:

"How about Detroit, Michigan?"

EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Audio Menu" SCREEN (when the audio source is in satellite radio mode)

Normal command recognition —

Audio>Select Channel Number>90> The channel will be changed to the one selected.

Natural speech recognition —

*Audio>**Play channel ninety, please>*** The channel will be changed to the one selected.

INFORMATION

Natural speech example:

"Switch the channel to XM one seventy five."

VOICE RECOGNITION TOP SCREEN EXPRESSION EXAMPLES

Normal command recognition —

Command List>Dual Map> The map will be displayed in dual map mode.

Natural speech recognition —

Switch to dual map mode.> The map will be displayed in dual map mode.

— Command list

The system has a voice recognition command list. You can operate the voice recognition system by saying any command from the displayed command list.

1. Push the talk switch.

2. Say *"Command list"*.

3. Say the command of your choice to operate the system.

To confirm commands on the screen, select ↑ or ↓ to scroll through the command list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

INFORMATION

When the "Voice Menu" screen is displayed, all the commands in the voice recognition command list can be recognized.

- **Voice command example: Changing map screen**

1. **Push the talk switch.**
2. **Say "*Command list*".**

3. **Say "*Dual map*".**

To confirm commands on the screen, select ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the command list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

When ▲ or ▼ is selected, push the talk switch again and say the command.

The screen shows the dual map.

- **Voice command example: Changing map scale**

1. **Push the talk switch.**
2. **Say "*Command list*".**

3. **Say "*Zoom in*" or "*Zoom out*".**

To confirm commands on the screen, select ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the command list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

When ▲ or ▼ is selected, push the talk switch again and say the command.

The scale of the map display is changed.

COMMAND LIST

Change map mode	
Command	Action
Map	Shows current position map.
Dual map	Changes map to dual mode.
Single map	Changes map to single mode.
Compass mode	Changes map to compass mode.
Change map scale	
Command	Action
Zoom in	Zoom in.
Zoom out	Zoom out.
Right map zoom in	Zooms right map in.
Right map zoom out	Zooms right map out.
Change map orientation	
Command	Action
North up	Changes map bearing to north up.
Heading up	Changes map bearing to heading up.
Map direction	Changes map bearing to another direction.
Right map north up	Changes right map bearing to north up.
Right map heading up	Changes right map bearing to heading up.
Right map direction	Changes right map bearing to another direction.
Change guidance mode	
Command	Action
Arrow mode	Changes guidance screen to arrow mode.
Turn list mode	Changes guidance screen to turn list mode.

Change guidance mode	
Command	Action
Freeway mode	Changes guidance screen to freeway mode.
Intersection mode	Changes guidance screen to Intersection mode.
Set a destination	
Command	Action
Previous start point	Calculates route to previous start point.
Save a point on the map	
Command	Action
Mark this point	Marks the point on the map.
Change route	
Command	Action
Quick route	Changes route to quick route.
Short route	Changes route to short route.
Alternate route	Changes route to alternate route.
Detour	Calculates detour route.
Detour entire route	Calculates detour entire route.
Review route	
Command	Action
Route overview	Shows entire route.
Next destination map	Shows position of next destination.
First destination map	Shows position of first destination.
Second destination map	Shows position of second destination.
Third destination map	Shows position of third destination.
Fourth destination map	Shows position of fourth destination.
Fifth destination map	Shows position of fifth destination.
Final destination map	Shows position of final destination.

Delete destination	
Command	Action
Delete next destination	Deletes position of next destination.
Delete final destination	Deletes position of final destination.
Delete all destinations	Deletes position of all destination.
Guidance options	
Command	Action
Pause guidance	Pauses the guidance.
Resume guidance	Resumes the guidance.
Repeat guidance	Repeat voice guidance.
Louder	Turns volume up 1 level.
Softer	Turns volume down 1 level.
Traffic information	
Command	Action
Traffic information	Displays traffic information.
Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW GAS	Displays GAS STATION icons.
SHOW PARKING	Displays PARKING icons.
SHOW SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE	Displays SERVICE & MAINTENANCE icons.
SHOW DEALERSHIPS	Displays DEALERSHIP icons.
SHOW LEXUS	Displays LEXUS DEALERSHIP icons.
SHOW TOYOTA	Displays TOYOTA DEALERSHIP icons.
SHOW PARTS STORES	Displays PARTS STORE icons.
SHOW ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE	Displays ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE icons.
SHOW AUTOMOBILE CLUBS	Displays AUTOMOBILE CLUB icons.
SHOW CAR RENTAL AGENCIES	Displays CAR RENTAL AGENCY icons.
SHOW CAR WASHES	Displays CAR WASH icons.
SHOW OTHER AUTOMOTIVE	Displays OTHER AUTOMOTIVE STORE icons.
SHOW DINING	Displays DINING icons.

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW AMERICAN DINING	Displays AMERICAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW BAKERIES AND DELIS	Displays BAKERY & DELI icons.
SHOW BARBECUE AND GRILL DINING	Displays BARBECUE & GRILL RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW CAJUN AND CARIBBEAN DINING	Displays CAJUN & CARIBBEAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW CHINESE DINING	Displays CHINESE RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW COFFEE HOUSES	Displays COFFEE HOUSE icons.
SHOW FAST FOOD	Displays FAST FOOD icons.
SHOW FRENCH DINING	Displays FRENCH RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW GREEK DINING	Displays GREEK RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW INDIAN DINING	Displays INDIAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW ICE CREAM AND CANDY	Displays ICE CREAM & CANDY icons.
SHOW ITALIAN DINING	Displays ITALIAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW JAPANESE DINING	Displays JAPANESE RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW KOREAN DINING	Displays KOREAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW LATIN AND SOUTH AMERICAN DINING	Displays LATIN & SOUTH AMERICAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW MIDDLE EASTERN DINING	Displays MIDDLE EASTERN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW MEXICAN DINING	Displays MEXICAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW PIZZA	Displays PIZZERIA icons.
SHOW SEAFOOD DINING	Displays SEAFOOD RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW SPANISH DINING	Displays SPANISH RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW STEAK HOUSES	Displays STEAK HOUSE icons.
SHOW THAI DINING	Displays THAI RESTAURANT icons.

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW VIETNAMESE DINING	Displays VIETNAMESE RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW OTHER DINING	Displays OTHER RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW GROCERIES	Displays GROCERY STORE icons.
SHOW SHOPPING MALLS	Displays SHOPPING MALL icons.
SHOW CONVENIENCE STORES	Displays CONVENIENCE STORE icons.
SHOW HOME IMPROVEMENT	Displays HOME IMPROVEMENT icons.
SHOW OFFICE AND ELECTRONICS	Displays OFFICE & ELECTRONICS icons.
SHOW RETAIL AND DEPARTMENT STORES	Displays RETAIL & DEPARTMENT STORE icons.
SHOW DEPARTMENT STORES	Displays DEPARTMENT STORE icons.
SHOW BOOK STORES	Displays BOOK STORE icons.
SHOW CLOTHING AND SHOE STORES	Displays CLOTHING & SHOES STORE icons.
SHOW HOBBY AND CRAFTS	Displays HOBBY & CRAFT icons.
SHOW JEWELRY	Displays JEWELRY icons.
SHOW SPORTING EQUIPMENT	Displays SPORTING EQUIPMENT icons.
SHOW RECREATIONAL VEHICLES	Displays RECREATIONAL VEHICLE icons.
SHOW OTHER RETAIL STORES	Displays OTHER RETAIL STORE icons.
SHOW POLICE STATIONS	Displays POLICE STATION icons.
SHOW FIRE STATIONS	Displays FIRE STATION icons.
SHOW HOSPITALS	Displays HOSPITAL icons.
SHOW PHARMACIES	Displays PHARMACY icons.
SHOW OTHER MEDICAL FACILITIES	Displays OTHER MEDICAL FACILITY icons.
SHOW HOTELS	Displays HOTEL icons.
SHOW REST AREAS	Displays REST AREA icons.
SHOW AIRPORTS	Displays AIRPORT icons.
SHOW BUS STATIONS	Displays BUS STATION icons.

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW TRAIN STATIONS	Displays TRAIN STATION icons.
SHOW PORTS AND FERRIES	Displays PORT & FERRY icons.
SHOW TAXIS AND SHUTTLES	Displays TAXI & SHUTTLE icons.
SHOW FULL SERVICE BANKS	Displays FULL–SERVICE BANKS icons.
SHOW ATMS	Displays ATM icons.
SHOW ATTRACTIONS	Displays ATTRACTIONS icons.
SHOW ENTERTAINMENT	Displays ENTERTAINMENT icons.
SHOW TOURIST INFORMATION	Displays TOURIST INFORMATION icons.
SHOW PARKS AND BEACHES	Displays PARK & BEACH icons.
SHOW SPORTS AND FITNESS	Displays SPORTS & FITNESS icons.
SHOW BOWLING CENTERS	Displays BOWLING icons.
SHOW GOLF COURSES	Displays GOLF COURSE icons.
SHOW HORSE RACING	Displays HORSE RACING icons.
SHOW HEALTH AND FITNESS CLUBS	Displays HEALTH & FITNESS CLUB icons.
SHOW MARINAS	Displays MARINA icons.
SHOW MOTOR SPORTS	Displays MOTOR SPORTS icons.
SHOW SKI RESORTS	Displays SKI RESORT icons.
SHOW SPORTS COMPLEXES	Displays SPORTS COMPLEX icons.
SHOW NIGHTLIFE	Displays NIGHTLIFE icons.
SHOW PERFORMING ARTS	Displays PERFORMING ART icons.
SHOW CITY CENTERS	Displays CITY CENTER icons.
SHOW GOVERNMENT	Displays GOVERNMENT icons.
SHOW SCHOOLS	Displays SCHOOL icons.
SHOW DRY CLEANERS	Displays DRY CLEANING icons.
SHOW FLORISTS	Displays FLORIST icons.
SHOW LIBRARIES	Displays LIBRARY icons.
SHOW PERSONAL GROOMING	Displays PERSONAL GROOMING icons.

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW SHIPPING AND COPIES	Displays SHIPPING & COPY icons.
SHOW POST OFFICES	Displays POST OFFICE icons.
SHOW OTHER SERVICES	Displays OTHER SERVICE icons.
Delete POI icons	
Command	Action
Clear all icons	Deletes all POI icons.
Select audio mode	
Command	Action
Radio	Selects audio mode to radio.
AM	Selects audio mode to AM.
FM	Selects audio mode to FM.
FM1	Selects audio mode to FM1.
FM2	Selects audio mode to FM2.
Satellite radio	Selects audio mode to satellite radio.
Satellite radio 1	Selects audio mode to satellite radio 1.
Satellite radio 2	Selects audio mode to satellite radio 2.
Satellite radio 3	Selects audio mode to satellite radio 3.
CD	Selects audio mode to CD.
DVD	Selects audio mode to DVD.
CD changer	Selects audio mode to CD changer.
DVD changer	Selects audio mode to DVD changer.
Auxiliary	Selects audio mode to auxiliary.
Bluetooth audio	Selects audio mode to Bluetooth® audio.
iPod	Selects audio mode to iPod.
USB audio	Selects audio mode to USB audio.
Audio On/Off	
Command	Action
Audio on / Audio off	Turns audio system on and off.

Radio operation	
Command	Action
Seek up	Seeks up for a radio station.
Seek down	Seeks down for a radio station.
Type up	Seeks up for program type.
Type down	Seeks down for program type.
Disc operation	
Command	Action
Track up	Tracks up for a track number.
Track down	Tracks down for a track number.
Previous track	Selects previous track.
Disc up	Disc up.
Disc down	Disc down.
Climate command	
Command	Action
Automatic climate control	Turns air conditioner on and off.
Raise temperature	Turns temperature up.
Lower temperature	Turns temperature down.
?? degrees (?? is 65 to 85)	Selects temperature from 65 to 80 degrees.
Phone	
Command	Action
Dial by number	Calls by phone number.
Dial by name	Calls by giving a voice tag in the phonebook.
Select phone	Selects phone.

INFORMATION

- ***The function that cannot be used according to the vehicle is provided.***
- ***Voice recognition language can be changed. (See "● Selecting a language" on page 343.)***

SECTION 2

NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

- **Destination search** 66
  - Selecting the search area 66
  - Destination search by Home 68
  - Destination search by Preset destinations 68
  - Destination search by “Address” 69
  - Destination search by “Point of Interest” 73
  - Destination search by “Destination Assist” 80
  - Destination search by “Previous Destinations” 80
  - Destination search by “Address Book” 81
  - Destination search by “Emergency” 81
  - Destination search by “Intersection & Freeway” 82
  - Destination search by “Map” 85
  - Destination search by “Coordinates” 86
  - Deleting set destinations 86
- Starting route guidance 87

Destination search —

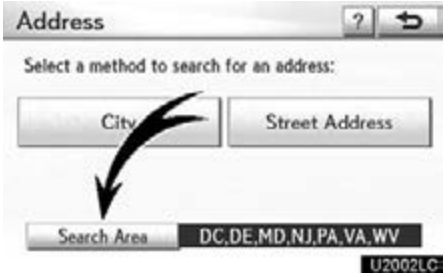
Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

You can use one of 11 different methods to search your destination. (See pages 68 through 86.)

INFORMATION
When searching the destination, the response to the screen button may be slow.

— Selecting the search area

Change the selected region in order to set a destination from a different region by using "Address", "Point of Interest" or "Intersection & Freeway".



1. Select "Search Area" to display a map of the United States and Canada divided into 15 regions. (For map database information and updates, see "Map database information and updates" on page 422.)

2. Select one of "US1" through "CAN" to select a region to search.

3. Select "OK" and the previous screen returns.

U.S.A.	
Button	States included in the search region
“US1”	Idaho Oregon Washington
“US2”	California Nevada
“US3”	Arizona Colorado Montana New Mexico Utah Wyoming
“US4”	Iowa Kansas Minnesota Missouri North Dakota Nebraska South Dakota
“US5”	Oklahoma Texas
“US6”	Illinois Indiana Kentucky Michigan Ohio Wisconsin
“US7”	Arkansas Alabama Louisiana Mississippi Tennessee
“US8”	Connecticut Massachusetts Maine New Hampshire New Jersey New York Rhode Island Vermont
“US9”	Washington, D.C. Delaware Maryland New Jersey Pennsylvania Virginia West Virginia
“US10”	Florida Georgia North Carolina South Carolina
“HI”	Hawaii
“AK”	Alaska
“PR”	Puerto Rico
“VI”	US Virgin Islands

Canada	
Button	Provinces and regions included in the search region
“CAN”	All provinces and regions in Canada included in this button.

— Destination search by Home

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Destination”.

2. Select “Go Home”.

The screen changes and displays the map location for home and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

If home has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear.

To use this function, it is necessary to set a “Home” address. (To register “Home”, see page 115.)

INFORMATION
Guidance starts from the current vehicle position to your home if “OK” is selected even while driving.

— Destination search by Preset destinations

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Destination”.

2. Select any of the preset destination buttons on the “Destination” screen.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the preset destination point and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

If a preset destination point has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear.

To use this function, it is necessary to set “Preset Destinations”. (To register “Preset Destinations”, see page 117.)

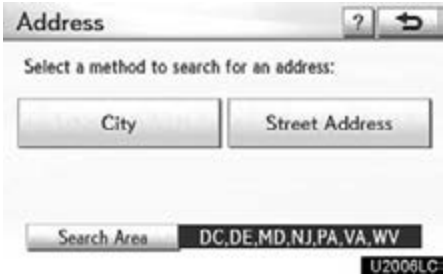
INFORMATION
Guidance starts from the current vehicle position to the preset destination point if “Go to ⊙” is selected even while driving.

— Destination search by "Address"

There are 2 ways to search a destination by address.
(a) Search by city
(b) Search by street address

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Address" on the "Destination" screen.



3. Select the button for the desired method.

(a) Selecting a city to search

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

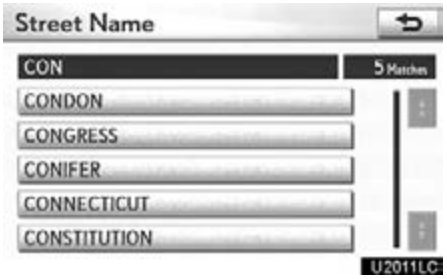
2. Select "Address" on the "Destination" screen.

3. Select "City".

4. Input a city name.

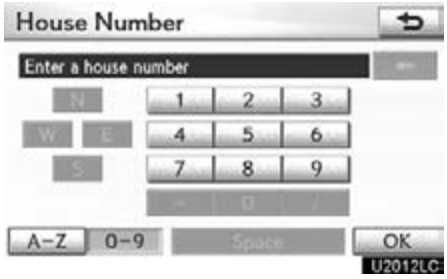
5. Select the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

6. Input the street name and select "OK".

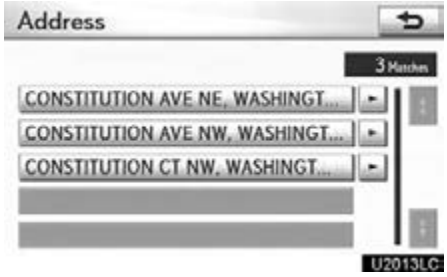


7. When the desired street name is found, select the corresponding button.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)



8. Input a house number.



If the same address exists in more than one city, the current screen changes to the address list screen.

SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES

1. Select “Last 5 Cities”.

2. Select the button of the desired city name.

If the navigation system has never been used, this function will not be available.

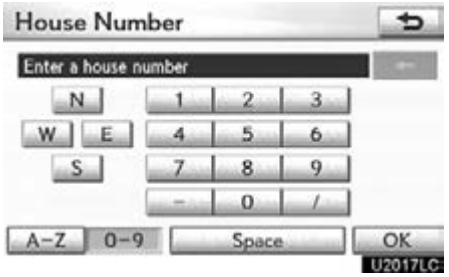
The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a street name. (See “(a) Selecting a city to search” on page 69.)

(b) Search by street address

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Destination”.

2. Select “Address” on the “Destination” screen.

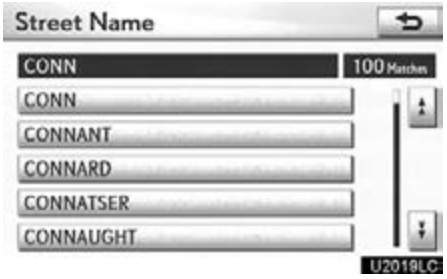
3. Select “Street Address”.



4. Select numbers directly on the screen to input a house number.

After inputting a house number, select **“OK”** to display the screen for inputting a street name.

5. Input the street name and select “OK”.



6. When the desired street name is found, select the corresponding button.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

If the same address exists in more than one city, the current screen changes inputting the city name or to the address list screen.

7. Input a city name.

8. Select the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

INFORMATION
You can search for a street name using just the body.
Example : S WESTERN AVE
You can input “S WESTERN AVE”, “WESTERN AVE” or “WESTERN”

— Destination search by "Point of Interest"

There are 4 ways to search by Points of Interest.
(a) Search by name
(b) Search by category
(c) Search by phone #
(d) Search by eDestination

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Point of Interest" on the "Destination" screen.

3. Select the button for the desired method.

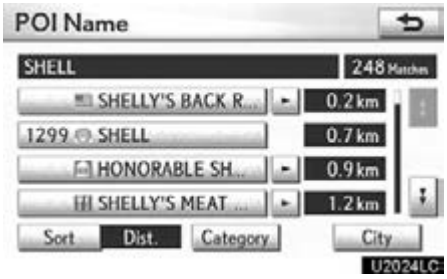
(a) Search by "Name"

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Point of Interest" on the "Destination" screen.

3. Select "Name" on the "Point of Interest" screen.

4. Input the name of the Point of Interest.

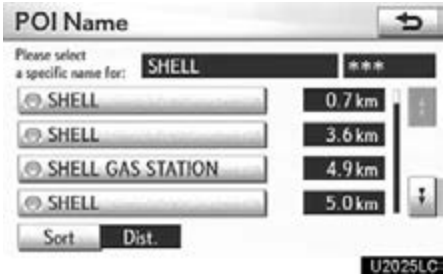


5. Select the button of the desired destination.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

When inputting the name of a specific Point of Interest, and there are two or more sites with the same name, the list screen is displayed.

INFORMATION
To search for a facility name using multiple search words, put a space between each word.

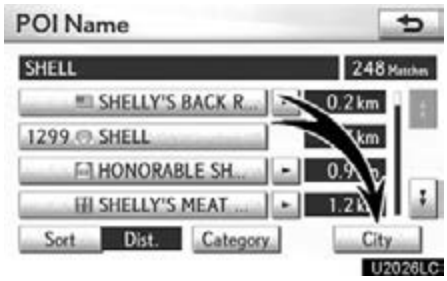


Select the button of the desired destination.

If the same name exists in more than one city, a search can be performed more easily with **"City"** and **"Category"**. (See "● Selecting a city to search" on page 74 and "● Selecting from the categories" on page 75.)

INFORMATION
The desired Point of Interest can be displayed on the map screen. (See " — Display POI icons" on page 106.)

● **Selecting a city to search**



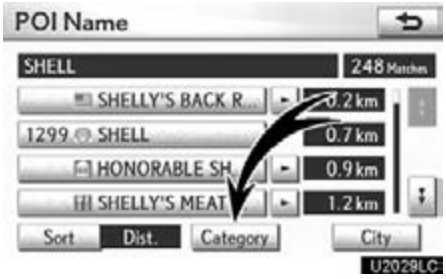
1. Select "City".

2. Input the city name.

3. Select the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

INFORMATION
To cancel the city setting, select "Any City".

- **Selecting from the categories**



Select "Category".

If the desired POI category is on the screen, select the name to display a detailed list of the POI category.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, select **"List All Categories"** to list all POI categories.

When the desired category is selected, the POI name list screen is displayed.

(b) Search by "Category"

The destination can be set by selecting the search point and the POI category.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Point of Interest" on the "Destination" screen.

3. Select "Category" on the "Point of Interest" screen.

Set the search point by the following method:

1. Set the search point from near the vehicle's current position
2. Set the search point from along the chosen route
3. Set the search point from near a city center
4. Set the search point from near a destination

It is possible to display the names of POIs located within approximately 200 miles (320 km) from the selected search point.

SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM NEAR HERE

Select “Near Here”.

The search point is set at the current position, and the “POI Category” screen will be displayed. (See page 78.)

SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM ALONG MY ROUTE

Select “Along My Route”.

The search point is set and the “POI Category” screen will be displayed. (See page 78.)

SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM NEAR CITY CENTER

1. Select “Near City Center”.

2. Input the city center name.

3. Select the button of the desired city center name.

The search point is set and the “POI Category” screen will be displayed. (See page 78.)

SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES

1. Select “Near City Center”.

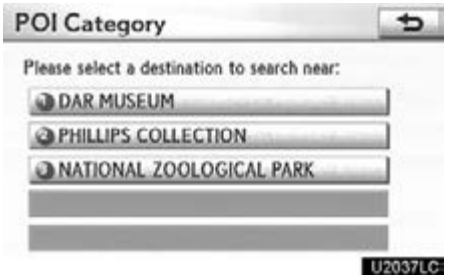
2. Select “Last 5 Cities”.

3. Select the button of the desired city center name.

The search point is set and the “POI Category” screen will be displayed. (See page 78.)

SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM NEAR A DESTINATION

1. Select “Near a Destination”.



2. Select the button of the desired destination.

The search point is set and the “POI Name” screen will be displayed. (See page 78.)

- **To search POIs near the search point**

When the search point is set, the “POI Category” screen will be displayed.

Select the desired POI category.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, select **“List All Categories”** to list all POI categories.

Select the desired POI category from the list.

By selecting the button of the desired item, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

(c) Search by “Phone #”

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Destination”.

2. Select “Point of Interest” on the “Destination” screen.

3. Select “Phone #” on the “Point of Interest” screen.

4. Input a telephone number.

5. After inputting a telephone number, select “OK”.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

If there is more than one site with the same number, the following screen will be displayed.

INFORMATION

- ***If there is no match for the telephone number inputted, a list of identical numbers with different area codes will be displayed.***
- ***To set an address book entry as a destination using the phone number, the number must already be registered. (See page 125.)***

(d) Search by "eDestination"

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Point of Interest" on the "Destination" screen.

3. Select "eDestination" on the "Point of Interest" screen.

With the eDestination feature, you can go online, via the Lexus.com owner's Web site, to select and organize destinations of your choice and then wirelessly send them to your vehicle's navigation system. You can store up to 200 locations online to access and update at any time. Your locations can be organized into up to 20 folders. (See "eDestination" on page 164.)

— Destination search by "Destination Assist"

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Destination Assist" on the "Destination" screen.

3. Select "Call Dest. Assist" on the "Destination Assist" screen.

Destination Assist provides you with live assistance for finding destinations via the Lexus Enform response center. You can request either a specific business, address, or ask for help locating your desired destination by category, such as restaurants, gas stations, shopping centers or other points of interest (POI). After you tell the agent your choice of destination, its coordinates are sent wirelessly to your vehicle's navigation system. (See "Destination Assist" on page 161.)

— Destination search by "Previous Destinations"

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Previous Destinations" on the "Destination" screen.

The previous starting point and up to 100 previously set destinations are displayed on the screen.

3. Select the button of the desired destination.

"Delete": To delete the previous destination. (To delete previous destinations, see page 131.)

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

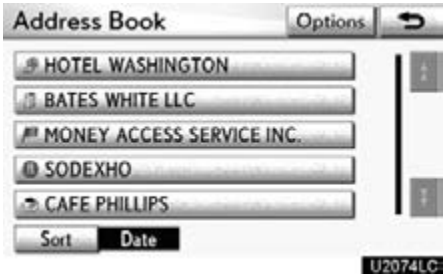
INFORMATION
The list of previous destinations can also be deleted by selecting "Delete Previous Dest." on the "Navigation Settings" screen when the vehicle is stopped. (See " — Deleting previous destinations" on page 131.)

— Destination search by "Address Book"

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Address Book" on the "Destination" screen.

A list of registered address book entries is displayed.



3. Select the button of the desired address book entry.

"Options": To register or edit address book. (See page 120.)

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

— Destination search by "Emergency"

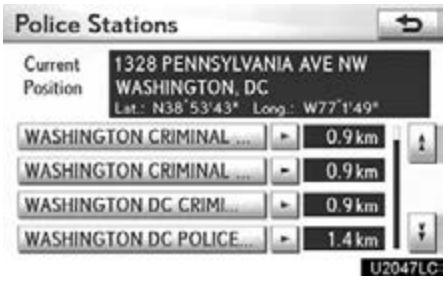
1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Emergency" on the second page of the "Destination" screen.

The display changes to a screen to select police stations, dealers, hospitals or fire stations. While driving, only nearby police stations, dealers, hospitals, or fire stations are shown. The current position is shown with an address, and the latitude and the longitude at the top of the screen.

3. Select the desired emergency category.

The selected emergency category list is displayed.



4. Select the button of the desired destination.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

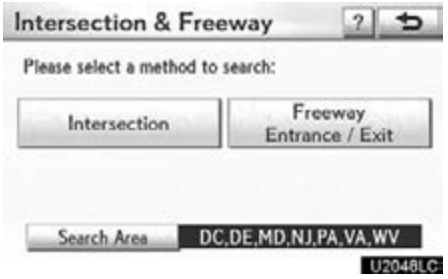
INFORMATION
The navigation system does not guide in areas where route guidance is unavailable. (See page 421.)

— Destination search by “Intersection & Freeway”

There are 2 ways to search.
(a) Search by intersection
(b) Search by Freeway Entrance/Exit

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Destination”.

2. Select “Intersection & Freeway” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



3. Select the button for the desired method.

(a) Search by “Intersection”

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Destination”.

2. Select “Intersection & Freeway” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.

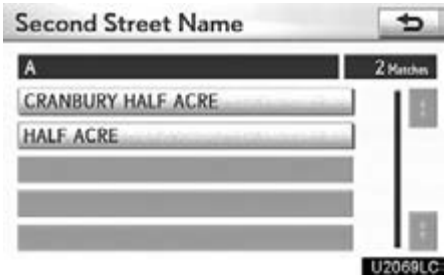
3. Select “Intersection” on the “Intersection & Freeway” screen.

4. Input the name of the first intersecting street which are located near the destination to be set.

5. Select “OK”.

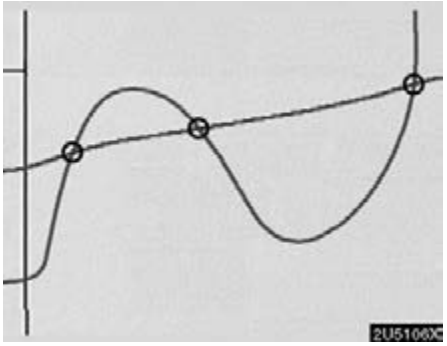
6. Select the button of the desired item.

7. Input the name of the second intersecting street.



8. Select the button of the desired item.

After inputting the two intersecting streets, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)



If the same two streets cross at more than one intersection, the screen changes and displays the menu to select the city name where the streets intersect. Select the city, and the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 87.)

(b) Search by “Freeway Entrance/ Exit”

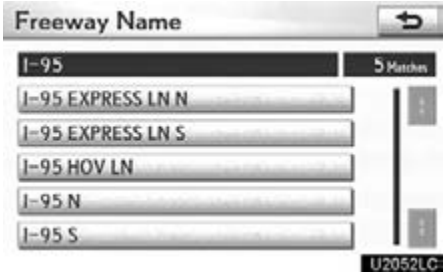
1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Destination”.

2. Select “Intersection & Freeway” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.

3. Select “Freeway Entrance/Exit” on the “Intersection & Freeway” screen.

4. To input a freeway name.

Be sure to use the complete name of the freeway or highway, including the hyphen, when entering the destination. Freeways and interstates use an “I” (I–405). US highways use the state designation before the number (CA–118).



5. Select the desired freeway by selecting the button.

6. Either a freeway "Entrance" or "Exit" can be selected.

7. To input a freeway entrance or exit name.

8. Select "OK".

9. Select the button of the desired entrance or exit name.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

— Destination search by "Map"

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Map" on the second page of the "Destination" screen.

The screen changes and displays the map location that was previously displayed just before the destination input operation and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

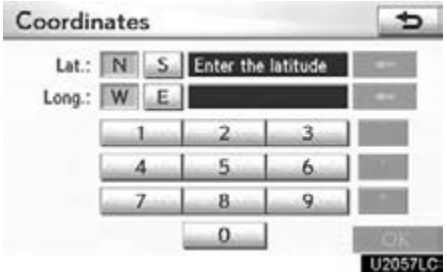
INFORMATION

Guidance starts if "OK" is selected even while driving. However, the cursor cannot be moved.

— Destination search by "Coordinates"

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Coordinates" on the second page of the "Destination" screen.



3. Input the latitude and the longitude.

4. When the input is finished, select "OK".

By selecting the button of the desired point, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

— Deleting set destinations

A set destination can be deleted.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Destination".

2. Select "Del. Dest." on the "Destination" screen.

When more than one destination is set, a list will be displayed on the screen.

3. Select the destination for deletion.

"Select All": To select all destinations on the list.

"Unselect All": To unselect all of the selected destinations.

4. Select "Delete".

A message appears to confirm the request to delete.

5. To delete the destination(s), select "Yes".

If **"Yes"** is selected, the data cannot be recovered.

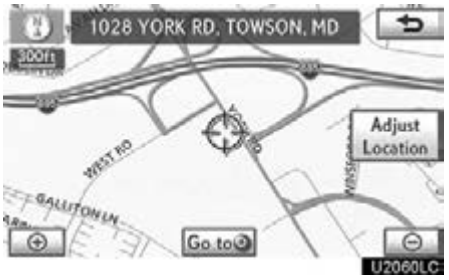
If **"No"** is selected, the previous screen will return.

The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

INFORMATION
Set destinations can also be deleted by selecting "Route". (See " — Deleting destinations" on page 99.)

Starting route guidance

After inputting the destination, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference.



1. Scroll the map to the desired point.

"Adjust Location": To adjust the position in smaller increments.

When an arrow facing the desired point is selected, the map scrolls in that direction.

The scroll stops when the selection of the arrow is released.

2. Select "Go to ⦿".

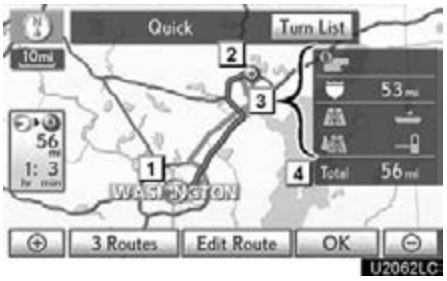
The system starts route search and displays recommended routes.

If there is already a set destination, **"Go to ⦿"** and **"Add to Route"** are displayed.

"Go to ⦿": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

"Add to Route": To add a destination.

"Info.": If this button is displayed on the top of the screen, select it to view items such as name, address, and phone number.



1 **Current position**

2 **Destination point**

3 **Type of the route and the distance**

4 **Distance of the entire route**

3. To start guidance, select "OK".

"Turn List": The following screen displays the list of the roads up to the destination.

"3 Routes": To select the desired route from 3 possible routes. (See page 89.)

"Edit Route": To change the route. (See page 90.)

INFORMATION

- ***Guidance can be paused or resumed. (See "— Pausing and resuming guidance" on page 105.)***
- ***If "OK" is selected until a beep sounds, demo mode will start. Push the "MAP/VOICE" button to finish Demo mode.***
- ***The route for returning may not be the same as that for going.***
- ***The route guidance to the destination may not be the shortest route nor a route without traffic congestion.***
- ***Route guidance may not be available if there is no road data for the specified location.***
- ***When setting the destination on a map with a scale larger than 0.5 miles (800 m), the map scale changes to 0.5 miles (800 m) automatically. Set the destination again.***
- ***If a destination is entered, the road nearest to the point you selected is set as the destination.***

⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to obey traffic regulations and keep road conditions in mind while driving. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, the route guidance may not indicate such changed information.

3 ROUTES SELECTION

1. To select the desired route from 3 routes, select “3 Routes”.

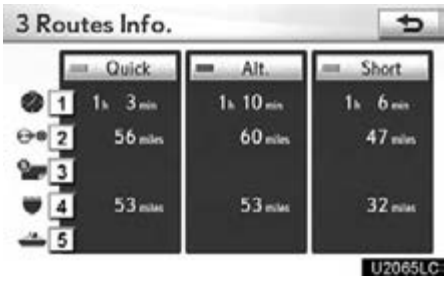
2. Select “Quick”, “Alt.” or “Short” to select the desired route.

“Quick”: Recommended route.
This route is indicated by an orange line.

“Alt.”: Alternative route.
This route is indicated by a purple line.

“Short”: A route by which you can reach the destination in the shortest distance.
This route is indicated by a green line.

“Info.”: To display the following information about each of the 3 routes.



1. **Time necessary for the entire trip**
2. **Distance of the entire trip**
3. **Toll road**
4. **Freeway**
5. **Ferry**

- **Edit route**

You can again designate the conditions of the route to the destination.

Select "Edit Route".

"Add": To add destinations. (See page 98.)

"Delete": To delete destinations. (See page 99.)

"Reorder": To reorder destinations. (See page 98.)

"Preferences": A number of choices are provided on the conditions which the system uses to determine the route to the destination. (See page 103.)

INFORMATION

- ***Even if the "Freeways" indicator is dimmed, the route cannot avoid including a freeway in some cases.***
- ***If the calculated route includes a trip by ferry, the route guidance shows a sea route. After you travel by ferry, the current vehicle position may be incorrect. Upon reception of GPS signals, it is automatically corrected.***

SECTION 3

NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

- Route guidance screen 92
- Typical voice guidance prompts 95
- Distance and time to destination 97
- **Setting and deleting destinations** 98
  - Adding destinations 98
  - Reordering destinations 98
  - Deleting destinations 99
- **Setting route** 100
  - Detour setting 100
  - Route overview 101
  - Route preference 103
  - Pausing and resuming guidance 105
- **Show on map** 106
  - Display POI* icons 106
  - Route trace 110

*: Point of Interest

Route guidance screen

During route guidance, various types of guidance screens can be displayed depending on conditions.

- **Screen layout**

1. **Distance to the next turn and the arrow indicating turning direction**
2. **Current street name**
3. **Distance and travel/arrival time to the destination**
4. **Current position**
5. **Guidance route**

INFORMATION

- ***If the vehicle goes off the guidance route, the route is searched again.***
- ***For some areas, the roads have not been completely digitized in our database. For this reason, the route guidance may select road that should not be traveled on.***
- ***When you arrive at your destination, the destination name will be displayed on the top of the screen. Selecting "Off" clears the display.***
- ***When the head−up display is on, turn−by−turn guidance arrows will be displayed on the windshield.***

- **During freeway driving**

During freeway driving, the freeway exit information screen will be displayed.

This screen displays the distance to the next junction and exit, or POIs in the vicinity of the freeway exit.

1. **Current position**
2. **Points of Interest that are close to a freeway exit**
3. **Exit number and junction name**
4. **Distance from the current position to the exit or junction**
5. **Current street name**

"Map": To display the selected map of the exit vicinity.

: To scroll for farther junctions or exits.

: To scroll for closer junctions or exits.

: To scroll for the closest 3 junctions or exits.

- **When approaching a freeway exit or junction**

When the vehicle approaches an exit or junction, the guidance screen for the freeway will be displayed.

1 **Next street name**

2 **Distance from the current position to the exit or junction**

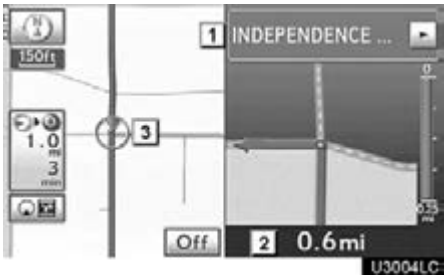
3 **Current position**

"Off": The guidance screen on freeway disappears and the map screen appears.

When selecting Intersection or pushing the **"MAP/VOICE"** button, the guidance screen on freeway reappears.

- **When approaching an intersection**

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the intersection guidance screen will be displayed.



1 **Next street name**

2 **Distance to the intersection**

3 **Current position**

"Off": The intersection guidance screen disappears and the map screen appears.

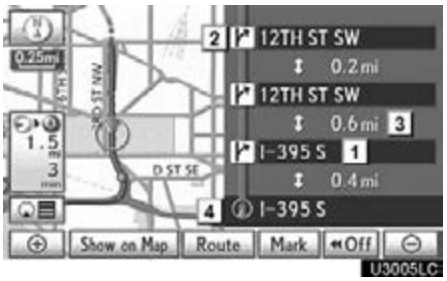
When selecting Intersection or pushing the **"MAP/VOICE"** button, the intersection guidance screen reappears.

- **Other screens**

TURN LIST SCREEN

On this screen, the list of turns on the guidance route can be viewed.

Selecting Turn List during guidance displays the turn list.



1 **Next street name or destination name**

2 **Turn direction**

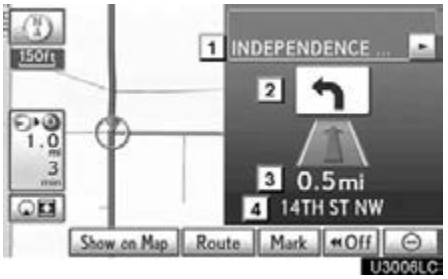
3 **Distance between turns**

4 **Current street name**

ARROW SCREEN

On this screen, information about next turns on the guidance route can be viewed.

Selecting Arrow during guidance displays the arrow screen.



1 **Exit number, street name containing number or next street name**

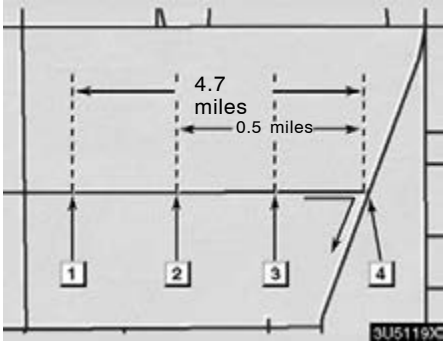
2 **Turn direction**

3 **Distance to the next turn**

4 **Current street name**

Typical voice guidance prompts

The voice guidance provides various messages as you approach an intersection, or other point where you need to maneuver the vehicle.



1 ♪ "Proceed about 5 miles to Main street."

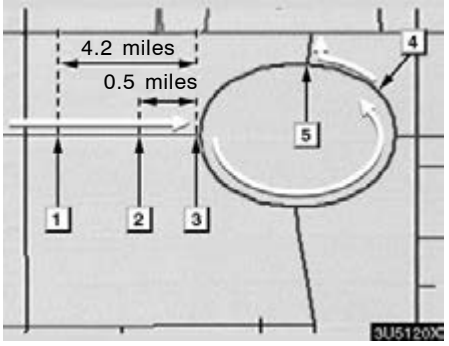
2 ♪ "In half of a mile, right turn onto Main street."

3 ♪ "Right turn."

4 ♪♪ (Beep sound only)

INFORMATION

- ***The street names may not be pronounced correctly or clearly due to text−to−speech function.***
- ***On freeways, interstates or other highways with higher speed limits, the voice guidance will be made at earlier points than on city streets in order to allow time to maneuver.***



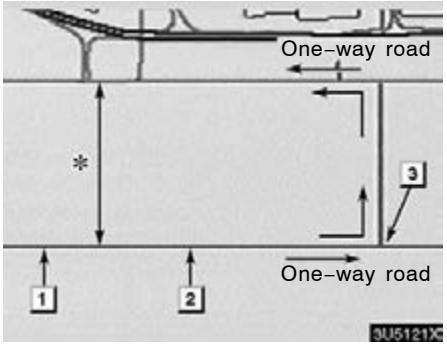
1 ♪ "Proceed about 4 miles to the traffic circle."

2 ♪ "In half of a mile, traffic circle ahead, and then 3rd exit ahead onto Main street."

3 ♪ "The 3rd exit ahead."

4 ♪ "The exit ahead."

5 ♪♪ (Beep sound only)

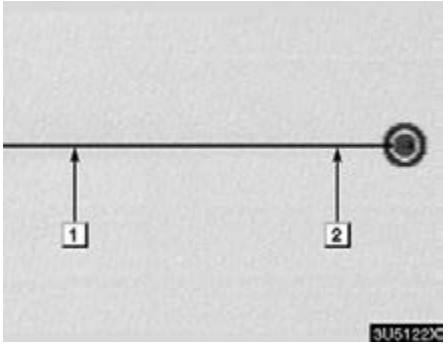


*: The system indicates a U–turn if the distance between two one–way roads (of opposite directions) is less than 50 feet (15 m) in residential areas or 164 feet (50 m) in non–residential areas.

1 ♪ "In half of a mile, make a legal U–turn."

2 ♪ "Make a legal U–turn ahead."

3 ♪♪ (Beep sound only)



The system announces the approach to the final destination.

1 ♪ "Your destination is ahead."

2 ♪ "You have arrived at your destination. The route guidance is now finished."

INFORMATION

- ***If the system cannot determine the current vehicle position correctly (in cases of poor GPS signal reception), the voice guidance may be made early or delayed.***
- ***If you did not hear the voice guidance command, push the "MAP/VOICE" button to hear it again.***
- ***To adjust the voice guidance volume, see "● Voice volume" on page 352.***

Distance and time to destination

When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance and the estimated travel/arrival time to the destination are displayed. When the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance and the direction of the destination are displayed.

When driving on the guidance route and more than one destination is set, the distance and the estimated travel/arrival time from the current position to each destination are displayed.

1. Select this button to display the following screen.

2. Select the number button to display the desired destination.

The distance, the estimated travel time and the estimated arrival time from the current position to the selected destination are displayed.

Estimated travel time is displayed.

Estimated arrival time is displayed.

To switch to estimated arrival time.

To switch to estimated travel time.

Displayed while driving off the guidance route. The destination direction is indicated by an arrow.

INFORMATION

When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance measured along the route is displayed. Travel time and arrival time is calculated based on the set vehicle speed information. (See page 356.) However, when the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance is the linear distance between the current position and the destination.

Setting and deleting destinations —

— Adding destinations

You can add destinations and search again for the routes.

1. Select “Route”.

2. Select “Add”.

3. Input an additional destination in the same way as the destination search. (See “Destination search” on page 66.)

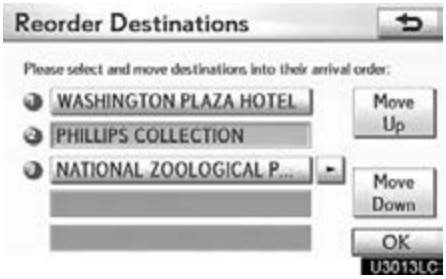
4. Select the desired “Add Destination Here” to determine the arrival order of the additional destination.

— Reordering destinations

When more than one destination is set, you can change the arrival order of the destinations.

1. Select “Route”.

2. Select “Reorder”.



3. Select the desired destination and select “Move Up” or “Move Down” to change the arrival order.

4. Select “OK”.

5. After selecting the destinations, select “OK”.

The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

— Deleting destinations

A set destination can be deleted.

1. Select “Route”.

2. Select “Delete”.

When more than one destination is set, a list will be displayed on the screen.

3. Select the destination for deletion.

“Select All”: To select all destinations on the list.

“Unselect All”: To unselect all of the selected destinations.

A message appears to confirm the request to delete.

4. To delete the destination(s), select “Yes”.

If **“Yes”** is selected, the data cannot be recovered.

If **“No”** is selected, the previous screen will return.

The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

Setting route —
— Detour setting

While the route guidance is operating, you can change the route to detour around a section of the route where a delay is caused by road repairs, or an accident, etc.

1. Select "Route".

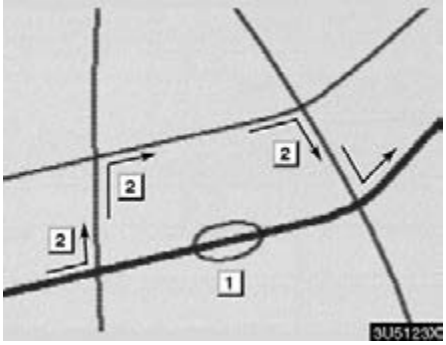
2. Select "Detour".

3. Select the button below to select the desired detour distance.

"1 mile (km)", "3 miles (km)" or "5 miles (km)": Select one of these buttons to start the detour process. After detouring, the system returns to the original guidance route.

"Whole Route": By selecting this button, the system will calculate an entire new route to the destination.

"Around Traffic": If you select this button, the system will search for the route based on the traffic congestion information received from XM® NavTraffic. For details, see "XM® NavTraffic" on page 176.



This picture shows an example of how the system would guide around a delay caused by a traffic jam.

1 This position indicates the location of a traffic jam caused by road repairs or an accident.

2 This route indicates the detour suggested by the system.

INFORMATION

- ***When your vehicle is on a freeway, the detour distance selections are 5, 15, and 25 miles (km).***
- ***The system may not be able to calculate a detour route depending on the selected distance and surrounding road conditions.***

— Route overview

1. **Select "Route".**

2. **Select "Overview".**

The entire route from the current position to the destination is displayed.

"OK": To start guidance.

"Turn List": The following screen displays the list of the roads up to the destination.

"Preview": To preview the route.

You can scroll through the list of roads by selecting ↑ or ↓. However, not all road names in the route may appear on the list. If a road changes its name without requiring a turn (such as on a street that runs through two or more cities), the name change will not appear on the list. The street names will be displayed in order from the starting point, along with the distance to the next turn.

These marks indicate the direction in which you should turn at an intersection.

Select "Map" on the "Turn List" screen.

The point which you choose is displayed on the map screen.

- **Route preview**

1. Select "Route".

2. Select "Overview".

3. Select "Preview".

: To indicate the next destination.

: To preview the route to the next destination.

: To preview the route to the next destination in fast–forward mode.

: To stop the preview.

: To review the route to the previous destination or starting point.

: To review the route to the previous destination or starting point in fast–forward mode.

: To indicate the previous destination or starting point.

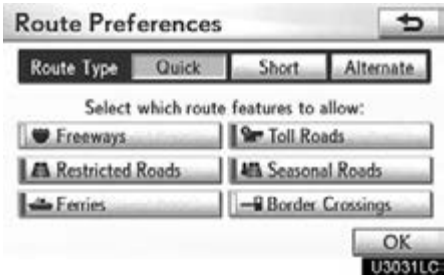
— Route preference

- **To select route type**

You can designate the route conditions of the route to the destination.

1. Select “Route”.

2. Select “Preferences”.



3. Select “Quick”, “Short” or “Alternate” and select “OK”.

The entire route from the starting point to the destination is displayed.

"OK": To start guidance.

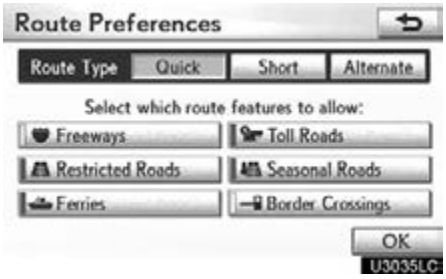
"Edit Route": To change a route. (See page 90.)

- **To select route features**

A number of choices are provided on the conditions which the system uses to determine the route to the destination.

1. Select "Route".

2. Select "Preferences" to change the conditions that determine the route to the destination.



3. Select the desired route preference by selecting the button.

When searching for a route, the system will avoid routes when the indicator is off.

4. After choosing the desired route preference, select "OK".

- **Starting route from adjacent road**

You can start the route guidance from the adjacent road.

(ex. When route guidance is set on the freeway, but the vehicle is driven parallel along the freeway.)

1. Select “Route”.

2. Select “Preferences”.

3. Select “Start from Adjacent Road”.

When there is no adjacent road, this button will not be displayed.

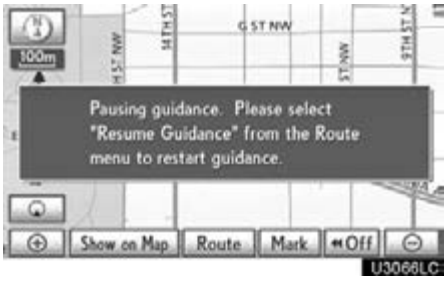
— Pausing and resuming guidance

- **To pause guidance**

1. Select “Route”.

2. Select “Pause Guidance”.

INFORMATION
Without route guidance, “Pause Guidance” cannot be used.



The screen will return to the current position map without route guidance.

- **To resume guidance**

1. Select “Route”.

2. Select “Resume Guidance”.

The screen will change to the current position map with route guidance.

Show on map — — Display POI icons

Points of Interest such as gas stations and restaurants can be displayed on the map screen. You can also set their location as a destination and use them for route guidance.

1. Select “Show on Map”.

2. Select “Select POI” to display a particular type of Point of Interest on the screen.

When the Points of Interest to be displayed on the map screen have already been set, **“Change POI”** is displayed.

A screen with a limited choice of Points of Interest will be displayed. (To change the displayed POI, see page 358.)

- **Selecting POIs to be displayed**

Up to 5 categories of icons can be displayed on the screen.

Select the desired Point of Interest category to display POI location symbols on the map screen.

By selecting the desired POI category and then selecting **"OK"**, the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

To turn off the Points of Interest icons on the map screen, select **"Clear"**.

"Other POIs": If the desired Point of Interest can not be found on the limited choice screen, select this button.

"Find Local POI": When searching for the nearest Point of Interest, select this button. Then choose one of the categories. The system will list the points within 200 miles (320 km). (See page 108.)

Select "Other POIs" on the "Select POI Icons" screen.

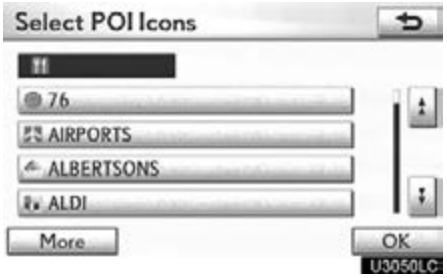
When a Point of Interest category is selected from either the limited list or the complete list, the screen will display symbols of those locations on the map screen.

Select the desired POI categories.

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

By selecting the desired POI category and then selecting **"OK"**, the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, select **"List All Categories"** to list all POI categories.



Select the desired POI categories from the list.

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

By selecting the desired POI category and then selecting **"OK"**, the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

To return to the POI category selection screen, select **"More"**.

- **To display the local POI list**

Points of Interest that are within 200 miles (320 km) of the current position will be listed from among the selected categories.

1. Select "Find Local POI" on the "Select POI Icons" screen.

2. Select the button of the desired Point of Interest.

The selected Points of Interest are displayed on the map screen.

"Near...": To search for Points of Interest near the current position or along the route.

"Near Here" : When **"Near Here"** is selected, the list of Points of Interest near the current position will be displayed.

"Along My Route" : When **"Along My Route"** is selected, the list of Points of Interest along the route will be displayed.

- **To set a POI as a destination**

You can select one of the Points of Interest icons on the map screen as a destination and use it for route guidance.

1. Directly select the Point of Interest icon that you want to set as a destination.

The map will shift so that the icon is centered on the screen and overlaps with the cursor ⌖. At this time, the distance from the current position is displayed on the screen. The distance shown is measured as a straight line from the current vehicle position to the POI.

2. When the desired Point of Interest overlaps with the cursor, select "Enter ⦿".

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

- **To hide POI icons**

1. Select “Show on Map”.

2. Select “POI Icons”.

The “POI Icons” indicator is dimmed.

The map screen will be displayed with the POI icons hidden.

To display the POI icons again, select “POI Icons” on the “Show on Map” screen.

— Route trace

It is possible to store the traveled route up to 124 miles (200 km) and retrace the route on the display.

INFORMATION
This feature is available on the map with more detailed map scale than 30 mile (50 km).

- **To start recording the route trace**

1. Select "Show on Map".

2. Select "Route Trace".
"Route Trace" indicator is highlighted.

- **To stop recording the route trace**

1. Select "Show on Map".

2. Select "Route Trace". The following screen will be displayed.

Selecting **"Yes"** stops recording and the route trace remains displayed on the screen.

Selecting **"No"** stops recording and the route trace is erased.

SECTION 4

NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

- **Navigation settings** 114
  - Setting up the “Home” 115
  - Setting up the “Preset Destinations” 117
  - Setting up the “Address Book” 120
  - Setting up the “Areas to Avoid” 126
  - Deleting previous destinations 131

Navigation settings —

Points or areas on the map can be registered.

The registered points can be used on the "Destination" screen. (See " — Destination search by Home" on page 68, " — Destination search by Preset destinations" on page 68 and " — Destination search by "Address Book"" on page 81.)

Registered areas are avoided at the time of route search.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi.".

On this screen, the following operations can be performed.

No.	Function
1	**Sets home** (See page 115.)
2	**Sets preset destinations** (See page 117.)
3	**Sets address book** (See page 120.)
4	**Sets area to avoid** (See page 126.)
5	**Deletes previous destinations** (See page 131.)
6	**Detailed navigation settings** (See page 354.)

— Setting up the “Home”

If home has been registered, that information can be recalled by using **“Go Home”** on the “Destination” screen. (See “— Destination search by Home” on page 68.)

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Home”.

- **Registering home (See page 115.)**
- **Editing home (See page 116.)**
- **Deleting home (See page 117.)**

(a) Registering home

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Home” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

4. Select “Set Home”.

5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See “Destination search” on page 66.)

When registration of home is completed, the “Edit Home” screen will be displayed.

6. Select “OK”.

To edit registered information, see “(b) Editing home” on page 116.

(b) Editing home

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Home” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

4. Select “Edit”.

5. Select “Edit” for the item you want to change.

“Name”: To edit home name. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 124.)

“Location”: To edit location information. (See page 125.)

“Phone #”: To edit telephone numbers. (See page 125.)

“Icon”: To select icons to be displayed on the map. (See page 123.)

6. Select “OK”.

(c) Deleting home

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Home" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.

4. Select "Delete".

5. To delete home, select "Yes". To cancel the deletion, select "No".

— Setting up the "Preset Destinations"

If preset destination has been registered, that information can be recalled by using **"Preset Destinations"** on the "Destination" screen. (See "— Destination search by Preset Destinations" on page 68.)

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Preset Destinations".

- **Registering preset destination (See page 118.)**
- **Editing preset destination (See page 119.)**
- **Deleting preset destination (See page 120.)**

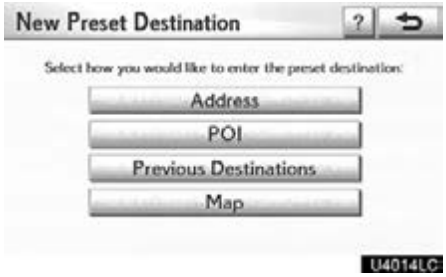
(a) Registering preset destinations

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

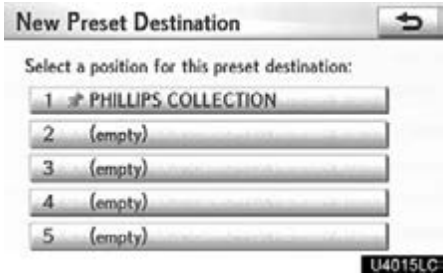
2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Preset Destinations” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

4. Select “Set”.



5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See “Destination search” on page 66.)



6. Select a position for this preset destination.

When registration of preset destination is completed, the “Edit Preset Destination” screen will be displayed.

7. Select “OK”.

To edit registered information, see “(b) Editing preset destinations” on page 119.

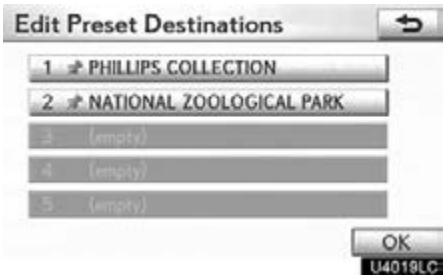
(b) Editing preset destinations

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Preset Destinations” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

4. Select “Edit”.



5. Select the button of the desired preset destination.

6. Select “Edit” for the item you want to change.

“Name”: To edit preset destination names. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 124.)

“Location”: To edit location information. (See page 125.)

“Phone #”: To edit telephone numbers. (See page 125.)

“Icon”: To select icons to be displayed on the map. (See page 123.)

7. Select “OK”.

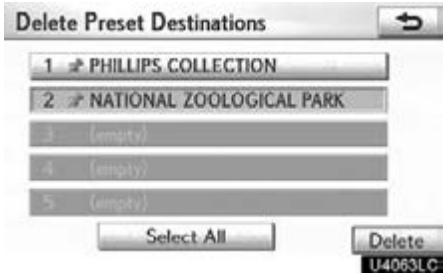
(c) Deleting preset destinations

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Preset Destinations" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.

4. Select "Delete".



5. Select the preset destination for deletion.

"Select All": To select all preset destinations on the list.

"Unselect All": To unselect all of the selected preset destinations.

6. Select "Delete".

7. To delete preset destination, select "Yes". To cancel the deletion, select "No".

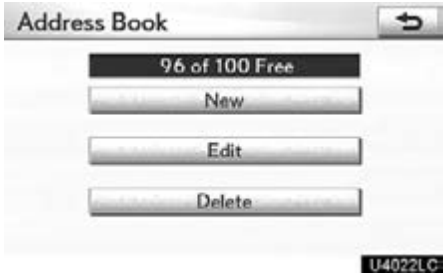
— Setting up the "Address Book"

Points or areas on the map can be registered.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Address Book".



- **Registering address book entries (See page 121.)**
- **Editing address book entries (See page 122.)**
- **Deleting address book entries (See page 126.)**

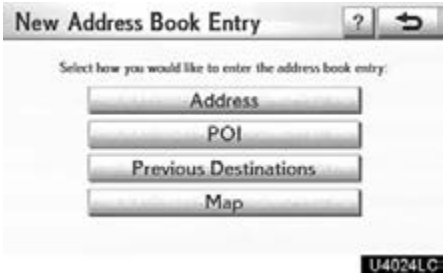
(a) Registering address book entries

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

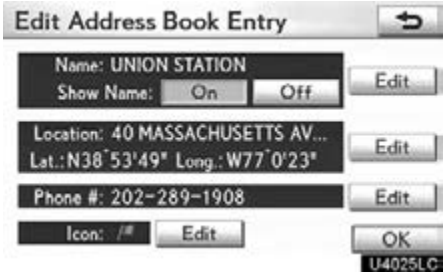
3. Select "Address Book" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.

4. Select "New".



5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See "Destination search" on page 66.)

After the address book entry has been registered, the "Edit Address Book Entry" screen will be displayed.



6. Select "OK".

To edit registered information, see "(b) Editing address book entries" on page 122.

INFORMATION
Up to 100 address book entries can be registered.

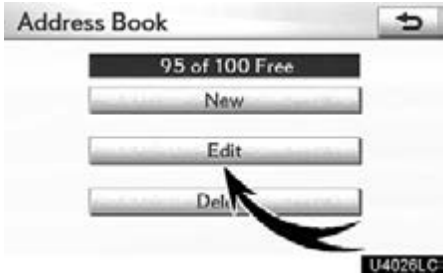
(b) Editing address book entries

The icon, name, location and/or telephone number of a registered address book entry can be edited.

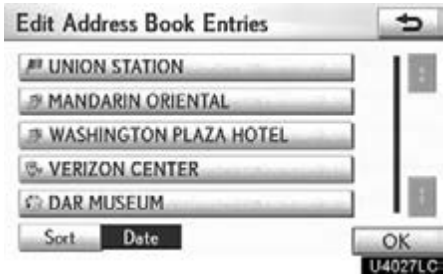
1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

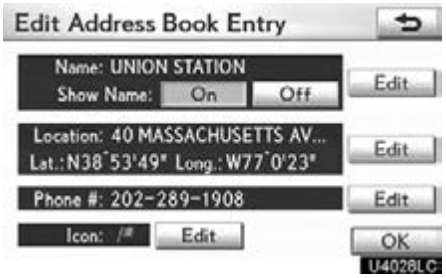
3. Select "Address Book" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Select "Edit".



5. Select the button of the desired address book entry.



6. Select "Edit" for the item you want to change.

"Name": To edit address book entry names. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 124.)

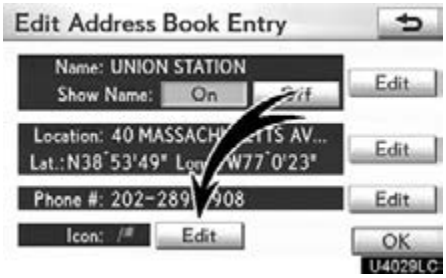
"Location": To edit location information. (See page 125.)

"Phone #": To edit telephone numbers. (See page 125.)

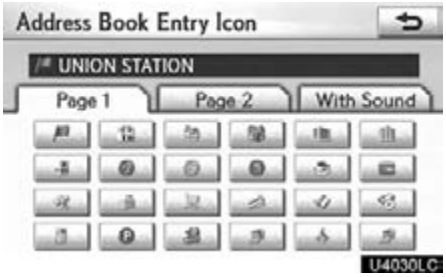
"Icon": To select icons to be displayed on the map. (See page 123.)

7. Select "OK".

- **To change “Icon”**



1. Select “Edit” of “Icon”.



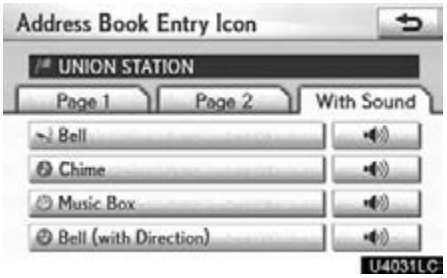
2. Select the desired icon.

Change pages by selecting **“Page 1”**, **“Page 2”** or **“With Sound”** tab.

SOUND ICONS

You can set a sound for some address book entries. When the vehicle approaches the location of the address book entry, the selected sound will be heard.

1. Select “With Sound” on the “Address Book Entry Icon” screen.



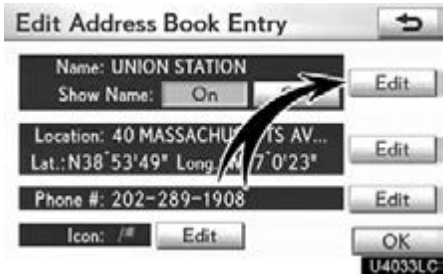
2. Select the desired sound icon.

The next screen appears when **“Bell (with Direction)”** is selected.

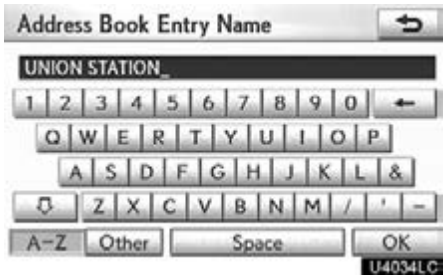
Select either ↓ or ↓ to adjust the direction. Select “OK”.

The bell sounds only when the vehicle approaches this point in the direction that has been set.

- **To change “Name”**



1. Select “Edit” of “Name”.



2. Enter the name using the alphanumeric keys.

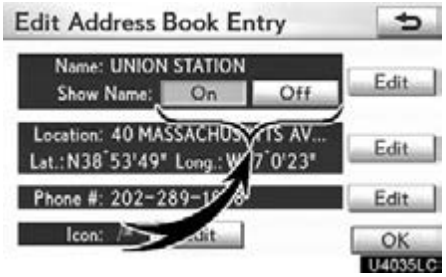
Up to 32 characters can be entered.

3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

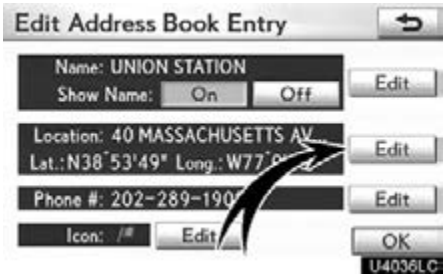
DISPLAYING MEMORY POINT NAMES

The name of an address book entry can be set to display on the map.



To show the name, select “On” on the “Edit Address Book Entry” screen. To not show it, select “Off”.

- **To change “Location”**



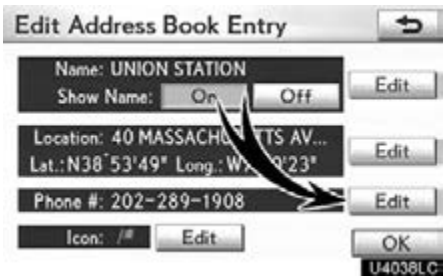
1. Select “Edit” of “Location”.

2. Select one of the 8 directional buttons to move the cursor ⌖ to the desired point on the map.

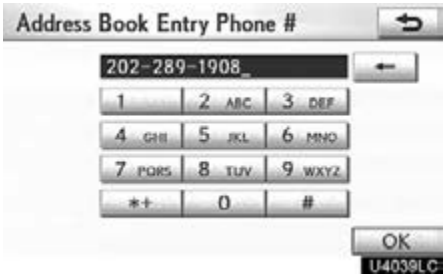
3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- **To change “Phone #” (telephone number)**



1. Select “Edit” of “Phone #”.



2. Enter the number using number keys.

3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

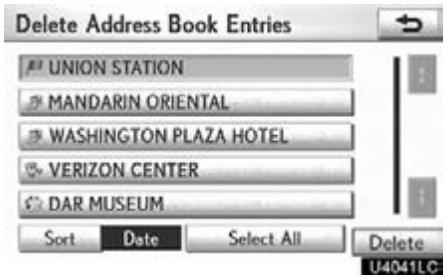
(c) Deleting address book entries

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Address Book" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.

4. Select "Delete".



5. Select the button to be deleted.

"Select All": To select all addresses in the address book.

"Unselect All": To unselect all of the selected addresses.

6. Select "Delete".

7. To delete the address book entry, select "Yes". To cancel the deletion, select "No".

— Setting up the "Areas to Avoid"

Areas you want to avoid because of traffic jams, construction work or other reasons can be registered as areas to avoid.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Areas to Avoid".

- **Registering areas to avoid (See page 127.)**
- **Editing areas to avoid (See page 128.)**
- **Deleting areas to avoid (See page 131.)**

(a) Registering areas to avoid

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Areas to Avoid” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

4. Select “New”.

5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search, or display the map of the area to be avoided. (See “Destination search” on page 66.)

6. Scroll the map to the desired point.

“Adjust Location”: To adjust the position in smaller increments.

7. Select “Enter”.

8. Select either ↑ or ↓ to change the size of the area to be avoided.

9. Select “OK”.

INFORMATION
• ***If a destination is input in the area to avoid or the route calculation cannot be made without running through the area to avoid, a route passing through the area to be avoided may be shown.***
• ***Up to 10 locations can be registered as points/areas to avoid.***

(b) Editing area to avoid

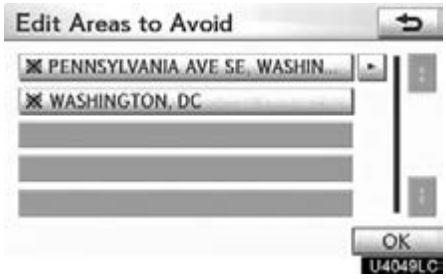
The name, location and/or area size of a registered area can be edited.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

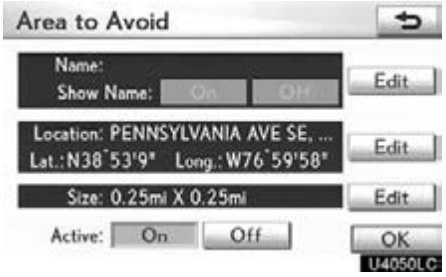
2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Areas to Avoid" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.

4. Select "Edit".



5. Select the desired area button.



6. Select "Edit" for the item you want to change.

"Name": To edit the name of the area to avoid. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 129.)

"Location": To edit area location. (See page 130.)

"Size": To edit area size. (See page 130.)

"Active": To turn on or off the area to avoid feature. To turn on the feature select **"On"** on the "Edit Area to Avoid" screen. To turn off the feature select **"Off"** on the "Edit Area to Avoid" screen.

7. Select "OK".

- **To change “Name”**

1. Select “Edit” of “Name”.

2. Enter the name using alphanumeric keys.

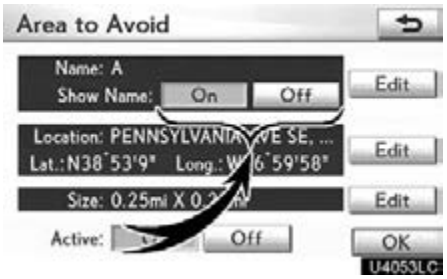
Up to 32 characters can be entered.

3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

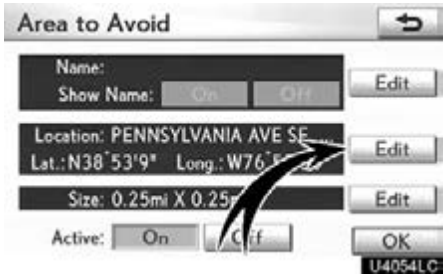
DISPLAYING NAMES OF AREAS TO BE AVOIDED

The name of an area to be avoided that may be displayed on the map can be set.



To show the name, select “On” on the “Area to Avoid” screen. To not show it, select “Off”.

- **To change “Location”**



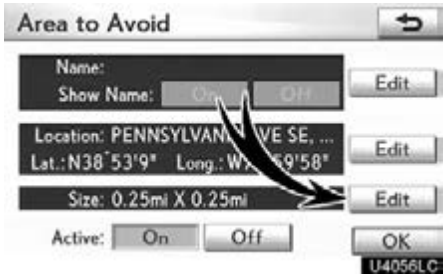
1. Select “Edit” of “Location”.

2. Select the 8 directional button to move the cursor ⌖ to the desired point on the map.

3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- **To change “Size”**



1. Select “Edit” of “Size”.

2. Select either ↑ or ↓ to change the size of the area to be avoided.

3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

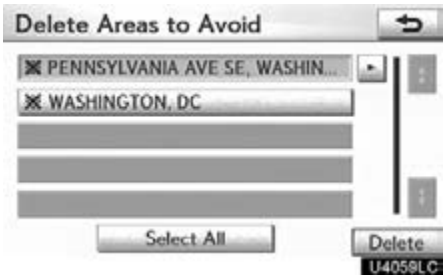
(c) Deleting areas to avoid

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Areas to Avoid" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.

4. Select "Delete".



5. Select the button to be deleted.

"Select All": To select all registered areas to avoid in the system.

"Unselect All": To unselect all registered areas to avoid in the system.

6. Select "Delete".

7. To delete the area, select "Yes". To cancel the deletion, select "No".

— Deleting previous destinations

The previous destination can be deleted.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Delete Previous Dest.".

4. Select the button you want to delete.

"Select All": To select all previous destinations in the system.

"Unselect All": To unselect all previous destinations in the system.

5. Select "Delete".

6. To delete the destination, select "Yes". To cancel the deletion, select "No".

SECTION 5

TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

- **Telephone (Hands−free system for cellular phone)** 134
  - Enter a Bluetooth® phone 138
  - Call on the Bluetooth® phone 143
  - Receive on the Bluetooth® phone 150
  - Talk on the Bluetooth® phone 150
- **Fuel consumption** 153
  - Past record 154
  - Consumption 155
- Calendar 156

Telephone (Hands−free system for cellular phone) —

Hands−free system allows you to make or receive a call without taking your hands off the steering wheel by connecting your cellular phone.

This system supports Bluetooth®. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system by which you can call without your cellular phone being connected with a cable or placed on a cradle.

If your cellular phone does not support Bluetooth®, this system can not function.

The operating procedure of the phone is explained here.

For registering and setting of the phone, see “Telephone settings” on page 363.

CAUTION

While driving, do not use a cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth® phone.

NOTICE

Do not leave your cellular phone in the car. The temperature inside may be high and damage the phone.

INFORMATION

- ***In the following conditions, the system may not function.***
  - ***The cellular phone is turned off.***
  - ***The current position is outside the communication area.***
  - ***The cellular phone is not connected.***
  - ***The cellular phone has a low battery.***
- ***Even if your cellular phone supports both hands−free and audio Bluetooth® connections, it may not be able to connect to the hands−free connection at the same time.***
- ***When using Bluetooth® audio and hands−free at the same time, the following problems may occur.***
  - ***The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.***
  - ***Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.***

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

INFORMATION

This system supports the following service.

- ***Bluetooth® Specification Ver.1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver.2.0+EDR or higher)***
- ***Profiles***
  - ***HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver.1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver.1.5 or higher)***
  - ***OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver.1.1***
  - ***PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver.1.0***

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot register the Bluetooth® phone, or use OPP or PBAP profiles individually.

Please go to "http://www.lexus.com/" to find approved Bluetooth® phones for this system.

By pushing the telephone switch above, you can receive a call or hang up without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

▶ **Microphone**

You can use the microphone above when talking on the phone.

The other party's voice outputs from the front speaker. When the received calls or received voice outputs, the audio from the audio system or voice guidance from the navigation system will be muted.

INFORMATION

- *Talk alternately with the other party on the phone. If you talk at the same time, the voice may not reach each other. (It is not a malfunction.)*
- *Keep call volume down. Otherwise, the other party's voice may be audible outside the vehicle and voice echo may increase. When you talk on the phone, speak clearly towards the microphone.*
- *In the following situations, your voice may not reach the other party.*
  - *Driving on unpaved road. (Making a traffic noise.)*
  - *Driving at the high speed.*
  - *The window is open.*
  - *Turning the air−conditioning vents towards the microphone.*
  - *The sound of the air−conditioning fan is loud.*
  - *There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone.*

1 Indicates the condition of Bluetooth® connection.

"Blue" indicates an excellent connection to Bluetooth®.

"Yellow" indicates a bad connection to Bluetooth®, resulting in possible deterioration of voice quality.

: No connection to Bluetooth®.

2 Indicates the amount of battery charge left.

This is not displayed when the Bluetooth® is not connected.

The amount left does not always correspond with the one of your cellular phone. The amount of battery charge left may not be displayed depending on the phone you have. This system doesn't have a charging function.

3 Indicates the receiving area.

"Rm" is displayed when receiving in Roaming area.

"Hm" is displayed when receiving in Home area.

The receiving area may not be displayed depending on the phone you have.

4 Indicates the level of reception.

Poor ← → Excellent

The level of reception does not always correspond with the one of your cellular phone.

The level of reception may not be displayed depending on the phone you have.

When you are out of the service area or in a place inaccessible by radio waves, “No Service” is displayed.

An antenna for the Bluetooth® connection is built in the instrument panel. The indication of the Bluetooth® connection may turn yellow and the system may not function when you use the Bluetooth® phone in the following conditions and places.

- Your cellular phone is obstructed by certain objects (such as when it is behind the seat or in the glove box and console box).
- Your cellular phone touches or is covered with metal materials.

Leave the Bluetooth® phone in a place where “Blue” indication is displayed.

About the phonebook in this system

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- All of call history
- Speed dial

When you delete the phone, the above−mentioned data is also deleted.

When you release your car:

A lot of personal data is registered when you use the Hands−free system. When you release your car, initialize your data. (See “● Delete personal data” on page 347.)

Once initialized, the data and settings will be erased. Pay much attention when initializing the data.

You can initialize the following data in the system.

- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Volume setting
- Details setting

FCC ID : AJDK021
IC : 775E−K021

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS−Gen and RSS−210 of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions : (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Co−location: This transmitter must not be co−located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

— Enter a Bluetooth® phone

To use the hands−free system, you need to enter your phone into the system. Once you have registered it, you can make a hands−free call.

If you haven't yet registered any Bluetooth® phones, you must first register your phone according to the following procedure.

Please see "● Registering a Bluetooth® phone" on page 365 of additional registration when registering.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Yes" to connect your phone.

4. When this screen is displayed, input the passcode displayed on the screen into the phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select **"Cancel"**.

5. When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

You do not need to enter the phone in case of using the same one.

When this screen is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

- **Connecting a Bluetooth® phone AUTOMATICALLY**

When you register your phone, auto connection will be turned on. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone in a condition where connection can be established.

When the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode, a nearby cellular phone you have registered is searched for.

Next, the system automatically connects with the latest of the phones connected to in the past.
Then, the connection result is displayed.

This screen appears when the Bluetooth® phone is first connected after the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

INFORMATION
It may take time if the phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio playback.

MANUALLY

When the auto connection has failed or "Handsfree Power" is turned off, you have to connect Bluetooth® manually.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Connect Phone".

4. Select "Handsfree Power", or select the phone to connect.

5. The "Connect Bluetooth*" screen is displayed.

6. When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

Now you can use the Bluetooth® phone.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

When you connect the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

- **Reconnecting the Bluetooth® phone**

If the Bluetooth® phone is disconnected with a poor reception from the Bluetooth® network when the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode, the system automatically reconnects the Bluetooth® phone. In this case, the connection result is not displayed.

If the Bluetooth® is disconnected on purpose such as you turned your cellular phone off, this does not happen. Reconnect it by the following methods.

- Select the Bluetooth® phone again.
- Enter the Bluetooth® phone.

— Call on the Bluetooth® phone

After you enter the Bluetooth® phone, you can call by using hands−free system. You can call using the 6 methods described below.

- **By dial**

You can call by inputting the phone number.

This cannot be operated while driving.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".

You can also push ☎ of the steering wheel to display the "Phone" screen.

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select the desired key to input the phone number.

Each time you select ←, an inputted digit is deleted.

When you select **"Redial"**, the number you called last is inputted.

Select ☎ or push ☎ of the steering wheel.

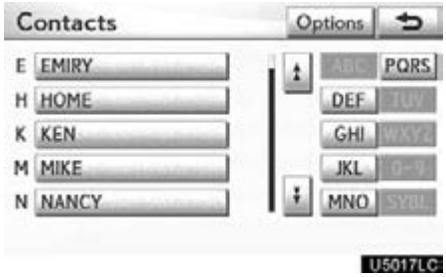
- **By phonebook**

You can call by phonebook data which is transferred from your cellular phone.

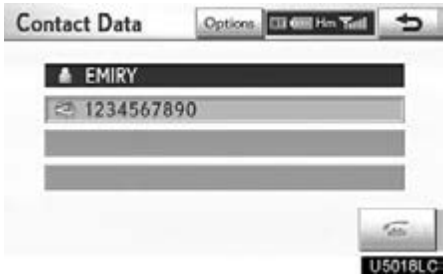
The phonebook changes dependent on the phone connected. You can register up to 1000 numbers in each phonebook.

This cannot be operated while driving.

1. Select “Contacts”.



2. Select the desired data from the list.



3. Select the desired number from the list.

Select or push of the steering wheel.

When the phonebook is empty

1. Select “Contacts”.

2. Select “Yes” if you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone.

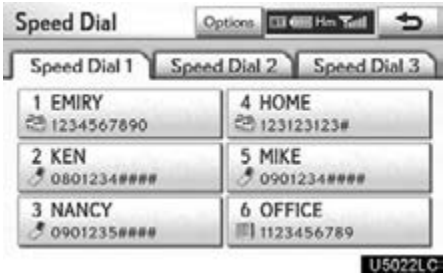
Select “No” if you want to edit the phonebook.

- **By speed dial**

You can call using registered phone numbers which can be selected from a phonebook. (See “● Registering the speed dial” on page 383 for registering the speed dial.)

This can be done while driving.

1. Select “Speed Dials”.



2. Select the desired number to call.

You can change the page by selecting “Speed Dial 2” or “Speed Dial 3” tab.

- **By call history**

You can call by call history which has 4 functions below.

"All": all numbers (missed, incoming or outgoing)

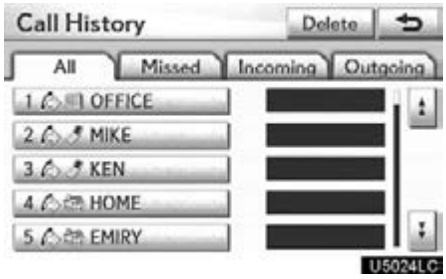
"Missed": calls which you missed

"Incoming": calls which you received

"Outgoing": numbers which you called

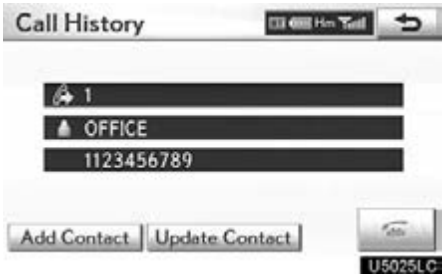
You can call using the latest 5 call history items shown by **"All"** while driving.

1. Select "Call History".



2. Select the desired data from the list.

When the list is switched, select "All", "Missed", "Incoming" or "Outgoing" tab.



3. Select or push of the steering wheel.

You can call using the latest call history item.

1. Push ☎ of the steering wheel to display the "Phone" screen.

2. Push ☎ of the steering wheel to display the "Call History" screen.

3. Push ☎ of the steering wheel to select the latest history item.

4. Select ☎ or push ☎ of the steering wheel to call the latest history item.

- When you call by phonebook, the name (if registered) is displayed.
- When you call the same number continuously, only the newest number is registered.
- When a phone number registered in the phonebook is received, the name and the number are displayed.
- Number−withheld calls are also memorized in the system.
- International phone calls may not be made depending on the cellular phone which you have.

- **By voice recognition**

You can call by giving a command. (For the operation and command of voice recognition, see "Voice command system" on page 49.)

This can be operated while driving.

The "Dial by Name" operating procedure is explained here.

Other operating procedures are also similar.

DIALING BY NAME

You can call by giving a voice tag registered in the phonebook. For setting the voice recognition, see "—Setting the voice tag" on page 390.

When you select "English" of "Language", you can call by giving a name registered in the phonebook.

For setting the voice recognition, see "● Registering the phonebook data" on page 376.

Example: Call MIKE.

You: Push the talk switch.

System: "After the beep, please say a command." "Such as "Go Home", "Destination", "Phone", "Audio", "Information" or "Com mand List"." "(beep)"

You: "Phone."

System: "Phone." "Say a command." "Such as "Dial by Number", "Dial by Name", "Redial", "Call Back" or "Connect Phone"." "(beep)"

You: "Dial by Name."

System: "Dial by Name." "Say a name from your contact list." "(beep)"

You: “MIKE.”

System: “MIKE.” “Say the type of number.” “Such as “Mobile”, “Home”, “Work” or “Other”.” “(beep)”

You: “Home.”

System: “MIKE.” “Home.” “Push the off–hook switch to dial or say “Dial”.” “(beep)”

You: “Dial.”

System: “Dial.”

Now, you can call MIKE.

Calling without the voice recognition

After the entry number is displayed, you can also call by pushing ☎ of the steering wheel or selecting **“Dial”**.

Cancelling the voice recognition

The voice recognition will be cancelled when you do the following.

- Keep on pushing the talk switch.
- Push ☎ of the steering wheel.
- Select **“Cancel”**. (Except for recognizing the command.)
- Say “Cancel”.

- **By POI* call**

You can call by selecting ☎ when it is displayed on the screen from navigation system. (See “POI INFORMATION” on page 41 for details.)

*: Point of Interest

— Receive on the Bluetooth® phone

When a call is received, this screen is displayed with a sound. Select or push of the steering wheel to talk on the phone.

To refuse to receive the call:

Select or push of the steering wheel.

To adjust the volume of received call:

Select **"–"** or **"+"** or use the volume switch of the steering wheel.

During international phone calls, the other party's name may not be displayed correctly depending on the cellular phone which you have.

— Talk on the Bluetooth® phone

While you are talking on the phone, this screen is displayed. You can do the operation below on the screen.

To adjust the volume of the other party's voice:

Select **"–"** or **"+"** or use the volume switch of the steering wheel.

To hang up the phone:

Select or push of the steering wheel.

To mute your voice:

Select **"Mute"**.

To input a Key:

Select **"0–9"**.

To transfer the call:

Select **"Call Transfer"**.

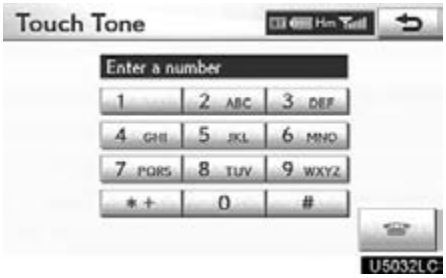
You cannot change from Hands–free call to cellular phone call while driving.

When you change from cellular phone call to Hands–free call, the Hands–free screen will be displayed and you can operate it on the screen.

Transferring method and behavior are different depending on the cellular phone which you have.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

When you select “0−9”

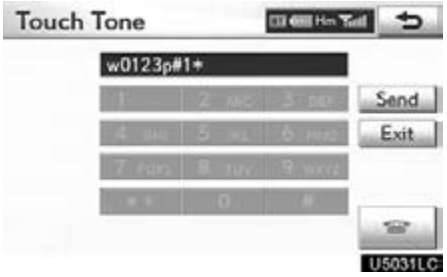


Select the desired number to input the key.

To hang up the phone:

Select ☎ or push ☎ of the steering wheel.

This cannot be operated while driving.



If the continuous tone signal is registered in a phonebook, this screen appears. (If not registered, “Send” and “Exit” are not displayed.)

Confirm the number displayed on the screen and select “Send”. The number before marked sign will be sent.

When you select **“Exit”**, this function will be finished and normal tone screen appears.

To hang up the phone:

Select ☎ or push ☎ of the steering wheel.

The continuous tone signal is the marked sign (p or w) and the number following phone number. (ex. 056133w0123p#1*)

You can do this operation when you want to operate an answering machine or use a telephone service in bank for example. You can register the phone number and the code number in the phonebook.

- **By voice recognition**

You can operate "Mute" and "Send Tones" by giving a command during a call.

The operating procedure is similar to other voice recognition. (For the operation of voice recognition, see "Voice command system" on page 49.)

- **Incoming call waiting**

When the call is interrupted by a third party while talking, this screen is displayed.

Select or push of the steering wheel to start talking with the other party.

Select or push of the steering wheel to refuse the call.

Everytime you select or push of the steering wheel while interrupt call, the other party will be switched.

If your cellular phone is not accepted for HFP Ver. 1.5, this function can not be used.

INFORMATION
Interrupt call operation may differ depending on your phone company and cellular phone.

Fuel consumption (vehicles with hybrid system)

Fuel consumption such as shown below can be displayed on the screen. For details see Section 1−1 of the vehicle owner's manual.

- **Energy monitor**
- **Consumption**
- **Past record**

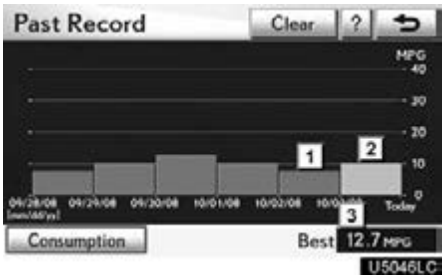
Fuel consumption (vehicles with gasoline engine) — — Past record

Fuel consumption information from recent resets will be displayed.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".

2. Select "Fuel Consumption".

If the "Past Record" screen does not appear, select **"Past Record"**.



"Past Record" screen will be displayed.

1 Fuel economy since the last reset

2 Current fuel economy

3 Best recorded fuel economy

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last reset.

Reset the average fuel consumption to measure the current fuel consumption again. For more information on resetting fuel consumption, see the vehicle owner's manual.

Past record data can be deleted by selecting **"Clear"**.

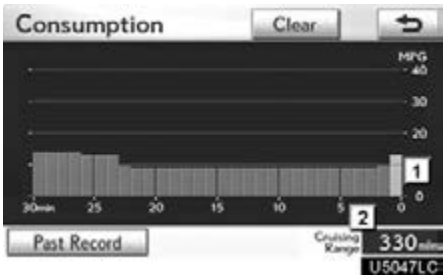
— Consumption

The average fuel consumption of the last 30 minutes will be shown in one–minute blocks.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.

2. Select “Fuel Consumption” on the“Information” screen.

If the “Consumption” screen does not appear, select **“Consumption”.**



“Consumption” screen will be displayed.

1 Fuel consumption in the past 30 minutes

2 Cruising range

Average fuel consumption is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Consumption data can be deleted by selecting **“Clear”.**

Calendar

To view calendar.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.

2. Select “Calendar”.

On this screen, the current date is highlighted in yellow.

▲M **or** ▼M **:** To change month.

▲Y **or** ▼Y **:** To change year.

“Today”: To display the current month calendar (if another month will be displayed).

SECTION 6

LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

- Lexus Enform with Safety Connect–Overview 158
- Destination Assist 161
- eDestination 164
- XM® Sports and Stocks 167
- XM NavWeather™ 172
- XM® NavTraffic 176
- Lexus Insider 178

Lexus Enform with Safety Connect−Overview

Lexus Enform and Safety Connect are subscription−based telematics services that use Global Positioning System (GPS) data, embedded cellular technology and XM® satellite data services to provide safety and security as well as convenience features to subscribers.

Lexus Enform and Safety Connect services are supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Lexus Enform service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware−equipped vehicles.

With an active Lexus Enform subscription, the following features are available:

- **Safety Connect features** (See your vehicle Owner's Manual, Section 3 for details.)
  - Automatic collision notification*1
  - Stolen vehicle location
  - Emergency assistance button (SOS)
  - Enhanced roadside assistance
- **Destination Assist** (see page 161)
- **eDestination** (see page 164)
- **XM® Sports and Stocks***2 (see page 167)
- **XM NavWeather™** *3 (see page 172)
- **XM® NavTraffic***3 (see page 176)

The following navigation−based Lexus Enform features are available without a subscription:

- **Lexus Insider** (see page 178)
- **Voice Command** (see page 49)

*1: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2

*2: Available at no extra charge with an active XM® satellite radio subscription.

*3: Available via separate XM® subscription(s).

- **Subscription**

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services. A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1−800−25−LEXUS (1−800−255−3987), or select the **"Destination Assist"** (see page 161) in your vehicle for further subscription details.

XM® NavTraffic and XM NavWeather™ require separate XM® subscription(s). XM® Sports and Stocks is available with an XM® Satellite Radio subscription. After a 90−day free trial, you must set up the appropriate XM® subscription(s) to continue receiving these services.

- **Availability of service(s)**

Lexus Enform premium services Destination Assist and eDestination will function in the contiguous 48 states and D.C. These services may also function in Hawaii and limited areas of Alaska for vehicles that contain map data for those states. They will not function in Canada or in other countries outside the United States.

Lexus Insider and XM® services will function in the contiguous 48 states and Canada. They will not function in Hawaii, Alaska, or countries outside of the U.S other than Canada.

The XM® NavTraffic, XM NavWeather™, and XM® Sports and Stocks services are available in the contiguous 48 U.S. states and Canada. For details about the XM® service coverage areas, refer to www.siriusxm.com or call XM® Listener Care Center at 1−877−515−3987.

- **Activation of service(s)**

Enrollment in Lexus Enform with Safety Connect (via your dealership) is required to activate all Enform services.

To receive XM® NavTraffic, XM NavWeather™, and XM® Sports and Stocks services, the XM® service must be activated. To activate the service, call the XM® Listener Care Center at 1−877−515−3987.

Customers should have their radio ID ready. The radio ID can be found by selecting "channel 000" on the radio. For details, see "(b) Displaying the radio ID" on page 206.

XM® Satellite Radio is responsible for all fees and services, which are subject to change.

■ Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect

FCC ID: O9EGTM1
FCC ID: O6Y−CDMRF101

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

Exposure to radio frequency signals: The Lexus Enform with Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low power radio transmitter and receiver. The system receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies.

- **ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]**
- **NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]**
- **ICNIRP (International Commission on Non−Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]**

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, government health agencies, and industry reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Lexus Enform with Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

INFORMATION

- ***Available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Lexus Enform response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, navigation map data, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.***
- ***The Lexus Enform response center will offer support in multiple languages.***
- ***Select Lexus Enform−subscribed vehicles are capable of communicating vehicle information, triggering owner reminder notifications.***

  Owners who do not wish to have their vehicle transmit this information can opt out of the service at the time of enrollment or by calling 1−800−255−3987 and follow the prompt for Safety Connect/Lexus Enform.
- ***For further details about the service, contact your Lexus dealer.***
- ***Lexus Enform with Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.***

Destination Assist

Destination Assist provides you with live assistance for finding destinations via the Lexus Enform response center. You can request either a specific business, address, or ask for help locating your desired destination by category, such as restaurants, gas stations, shopping centers or other points of interest (POI).

After you tell the agent your choice of destination, its coordinates are sent wirelessly to your vehicle's navigation system.

- **Make a call with Destination Assist**

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Destination".

2. Select "Destination Assist".

"Destination Assist" screen is displayed on the screen.

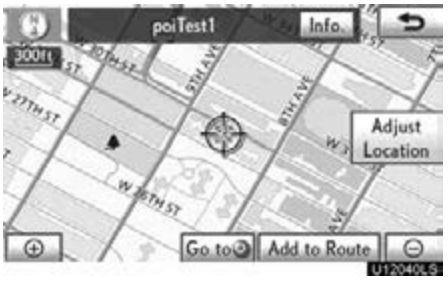
3. Select "Call Dest. Assist" to contact an agent.

4. When an agent comes on the line, tell the agent the address, business name, or the type of POI or service you would like to locate.

To adjust the call volume, select **"–"** or **"+"** on the "Destination Assist" screen, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel during the call.

You can end the call at any time by selecting **"Disconnect"** on the "Destination Assist" screen or the steering–wheel phone on–hook (hang–up) switch.

After the agent helps you determine your location of choice, he or she will place you on hold briefly and wirelessly send the POI to your vehicle's navigation system. The agent will then instruct you to either select **"Go to ⊙"** or **"Enter"** on the navigation screen in order to save the destination. The agent will then end the call.



5. Select "Go to ⊙" or "Enter" to set the location as a destination, receive navigation guidance via your navigation system and to save the destination to Destination Assist folder for future reference.

If there is already a set destination, **"Go to ⊙"** and **"Add to Route"** are displayed.

"Go to ⊙": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

"Add to Route": To add a destination.

- **Destination Assist History**

Locations you receive via Destination Assist will be saved to the navigation system.

Up to 100 destinations can be stored in the Destination Assist History.

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Destination".

2. Select "Destination Assist" on the "Destination" screen.

3. Select "Dest. Assist History".

4. Select the desired location in order to display its data and be able to be set it as a destination.

Select **"Sort"** to sort the locations by either date or name.

DELETE DESTINATION ASSIST HISTORY

You can delete destinations from your history.

1. Select "Delete" on the "Destination Assist History" screen.

2. Select the individual destination you would like to delete or "Select All".

3. Select "Delete".

eDestination

With the eDestination feature, you can go online, via the Lexus.com owner's Web site, to select and organize destinations of your choice and then wirelessly send them to your vehicle's navigation system. You can store up to 200 locations online to access and update at any time.

Your locations can be organized into up to 20 personalized folders.

You must first go online at www.lexus.com and go to the "Owners" section where you will need to register and log in. After this, you can create your personalized folders containing the locations you wish to send to your vehicle. (See Lexus Enform Guide for more information.)

- **Download eDestinations**

After updating your eDestination folders online, you will need to download the information to update the data in the vehicle.

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Destination".

2. Select "Point of Interest".

3. Select "eDestination".

"eDestination" screen is displayed on the screen.

4. **Select “Download”.**

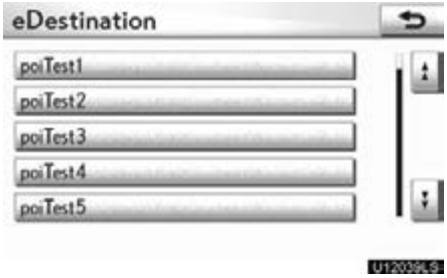
5. **Select “Yes” to confirm or “No” to cancel download.**

When **“Yes”** is selected, your most recent online eDestination data will be loaded to the navigation system.

- **Set an eDestination in the navigation system for guidance**

1. **Push the “MENU” button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select “Destination”.**
2. **Select “Point of Interest”.**
3. **Select “eDestination”.**

4. **Select the desired eDestination folder.**



5. **Select the desired location.**

The POI will be shown on the map. You can select the **“Go to ⦿”** button to set the POI as a destination with route directions.

You can also select the **“Info.”** button to display more information about the POI.

If there is already a set destination, **"Go to ⦿"** and **"Add to Route"** are displayed.

"Go to ⦿": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

"Add to Route": To add a destination.

You can also select **"Info."** to display more information about the POI.

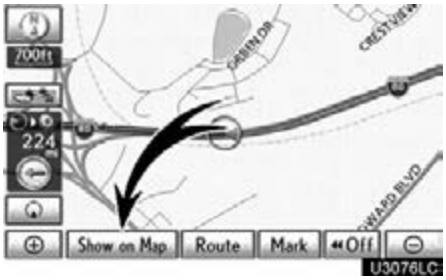
"Mark": To mark the POI on the navigation map.

"Go to ⦿": To set the POI as a destination with route directions.

"Add to Route": To add the POI as a destination.

"Detail": To read the POI notes you entered online, if any.

- **Show eDestination icons**



1. Select "Show on Map".

2. Select "eDest. Icons".
"eDest. Icons" indicator is highlighted.

XM® Sports and Stocks

XM® Sports and Stocks is a service included with XM® satellite radio subscriptions for Lexus Enform vehicles. With this service, you can receive updates via the navigation system on your personally selected sports teams and stocks.

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Info./ Phone".

2. Select "XM Sports" or "XM Stocks".

"XM Sports" or "XM Stocks" screen is displayed on the screen.

The following operations can be performed.

(a) XM Sports

- **Receive sports information** (See page 167.)
- **XM Sports settings** (See page 168.)

(b) XM Stocks

- **Receive stock data** (See page 170.)
- **XM Stocks settings** (See page 170.)

(a) XM Sports

You must first add your desired teams prior to receiving information. (See page 168.)

- **Receive sports information**

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Info./ Phone".

2. Select "XM Sports" on the "Information" screen.

3. Select the desired team for which you would like to receive information.

Teams for which there is no current data available will be shaded out and you will not be able to select them.

4. Select the specific information you would like to receive or select "Read All" to receive all available information for that team.

The selected information will be read in its entirety.

- **XM Sports settings — Add or delete teams**

To input your personalized XM Sports team.

1. Push the “MENU” button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select “Info./ Phone”.

2. Select “XM Sports” on the “Information” screen.

3. Select “Options”.

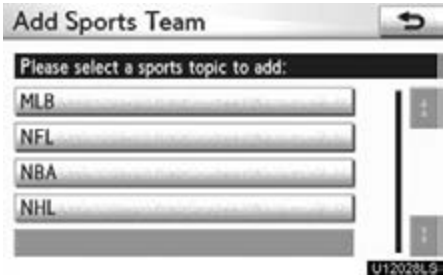
Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also input your personalized XM Sports team from the “Setup” screen. (See “Other settings” on page 417.)

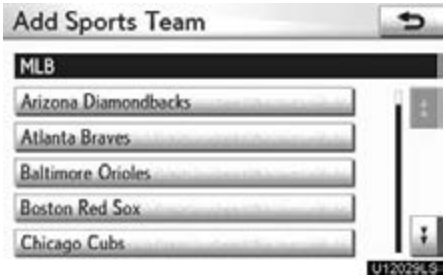
ADD SPORTS TEAM

1. Select “Add Sports Team”.

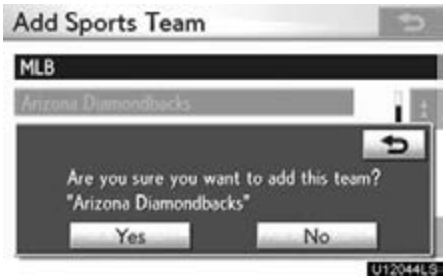
Up to 5 teams can be added and saved in the system for which you will receive information. You can change your teams at any time. Teams must be added one at a time.



2. Select the sporting league of the team you would like to enter.



3. Select the name of the team you would like to add from the list that appears.



4. Select “Yes” to confirm or “No” to cancel.

DELETE SPORTS TEAMS

1. Select “Delete Sports Teams”.

2. Select the sports team that you would like to delete or select “Select All” to delete all teams.

3. Select “Delete”.

4. Select “Yes” to confirm or “No” to cancel.

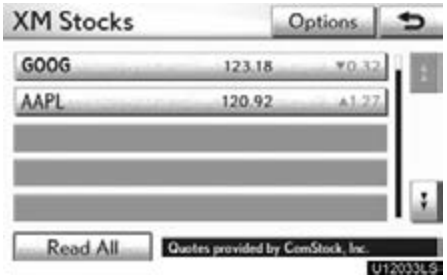
(b) XM Stocks

You must first add your desired stocks prior to receiving data. (See page 171.)

- **Receive stock data**

1. Push the “MENU” button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select “Info./ Phone”.

2. Select “XM Stocks” on the “Information” screen.



3. Select the individual stock for which you would like to receive verbal data or select “Read All”.

The available chosen data will be read in its entirety.

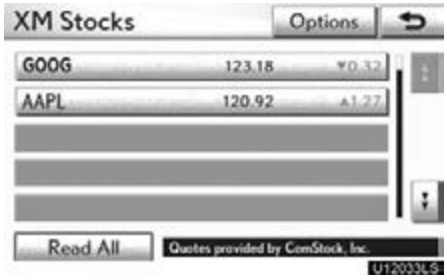
Stock data may be delayed by up to 15 minutes.

- **XM Stocks settings — Add or delete stocks**

To input your personalized XM Stocks settings.

1. Push the “MENU” button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select “Info./ Phone”.

2. Select “XM Stocks” on the “Information” screen.



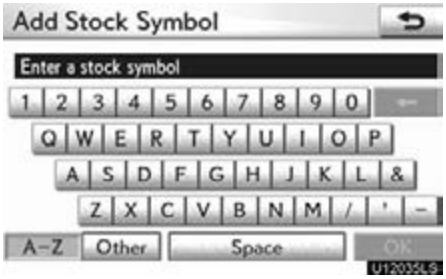
3. Select “Options”.

Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also input your personalized XM Stocks settings from the “Setup” screen. (See “Other settings” on page 417.)

ADD STOCK

1. **Select “Add Stock”.**



2. **Input the stock symbol you would like to add.**
3. **When finished, select “OK” to enter.**

You can enter and save up to 10 individual stock symbols for which you would like to receive data. Stocks must be input one at a time. You must know the symbol of the stock you wish to enter.

DELETE STOCKS

1. **Select “Delete Stocks”.**

2. **Select the stock you would like to delete or select “Select All”.**
3. **Select “Delete”.**

4. **Select “Yes” to confirm or “No” to cancel.**

XM NavWeather™

The subscription–based XM NavWeather™ service allows the navigation system to display weather information on the map.

See page 159 for subscription information.

The following operations can be performed.

- **Show XM NavWeather™ information**

Weather forecast information is displayed on the map. (See page 172.)

- **Weather information**

Weather information for the selected city is displayed. (See page 174.)

- **Weather warnings**

Weather warnings issued within an approximately 15.5 mile (25 km) radius around the vehicle are displayed on the warning screen. (See page 175.)

- **Show XM NavWeather™ information**

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Info./Phone".

2. Select "XM NavWeather".

"XM NavWeather" screen is displayed on the screen.

XM NavWeather™ SCREEN

1 "Info." button

When the city icon button is selected, the **"Info."** button will be displayed on the screen. Selecting this button displays the "Forecast" screen. (See page 174.)

2 City icon

When this button is selected, city names and the **"Info."** button will be displayed on the upper part of the screen.

3 "Forecast" button

When this button is selected, the city selection screen will be displayed.

Select a city to display weather information. Weather information of the selected city will be displayed. (See page 174.)

4 "Current Location" button

When the **"Current Location"** button is selected, a map of the vehicle's current location will be displayed.

5 Zoom in/out button

The scale of the map can be changed. Three zoom levels can be selected; 16 miles (26 km), 30 miles (48 km) and 60 miles (97 km).

6 Weather icons and grids

Inclement weather information is displayed on the map using weather icons and grids. Selecting an icon shows the related information at the top of the screen.

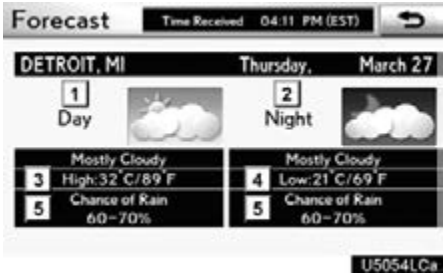
Icon	Weather
	Tornado
	Hurricane
	Storm
	Flood
	Winter
	Wind
	Extremes
	Other
	Hail storm
	Shear storm
	Heavy fog
	Heavy freezing rain/ice

Icon	Weather
	Heavy snow
	Heavy rain

- **Weather information**

1 **Received time**
2 **City name**
3 **Today's date**
4 **Current weather**
5 **Current temperature**
6 **Today's weather**
7 **Tomorrow's weather**
8 **Day after tomorrow's weather**
9 **Observed time**
10 **Specified day's weather**

When this button is selected, weather information for a specified day will be displayed.



1 **Daytime weather**
2 **Nighttime weather**
3 **Maximum temperature**
4 **Minimum temperature**
5 **Precipitation probability**

- **Weather warnings**

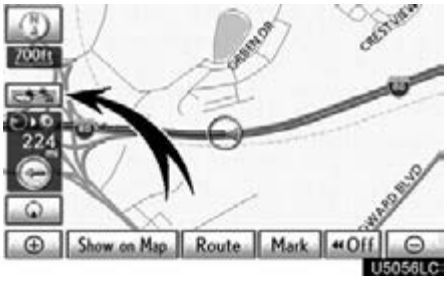
Weather warnings issued with in an approximately 15.5 mile (25 km) radius around the vehicle are displayed on the warning screen.

"Show Map": When this button is selected, the "XM NavWeather" screen will be displayed.

"OK": When this button is selected, the screen will return to the map of the current location.

This severe weather warning will display again if the severe weather is within an approximate 7.8 mile (12.5 km) radius around the vehicle.

- **XM NavWeather™ indicator**



When an XM NavWeather™ Warning is issued within the vicinity, the XM NavWeather™ indicator will appear on the screen.

XM® NavTraffic

The subscription–based XM® NavTraffic service allows the navigation system to display traffic information on the map.

See page159 for subscription information.

The following operations can be performed.

- **Show XM® NavTraffic Information**

Traffic information is displayed on the map. (See page 176.)

- **Auto Avoid Traffic**

If any heavy congestion or moderate traffic has been detected on the guidance route, it may be possible for you to select another route offered by the system. (See page 357.)

- **Traffic Voice Guidance**

Traffic information is provided using voice guidance. (See page 352.)

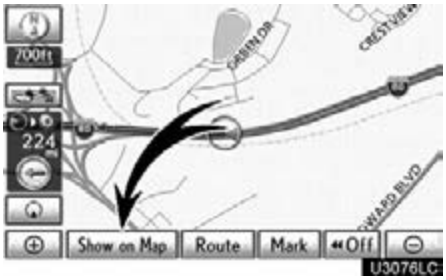
- **Show Free Flowing Traffic**

Freely flowing traffic is shown by the arrow on the map. (See page 358.)

INFORMATION

- ***Traffic voice guidance is available only in English. To select English, see "● Selecting a language" on page 343.***
- ***When the "Traffic Information" indicator is dimmed, "Auto Avoid Traffic", "Traffic Voice Guidance" and "Show Free Flowing Traffic" will not operate.***

- **Show XM® NavTraffic information**



1. Select "Show on Map".

2. Select "Traffic Information".

"Traffic Information" indicator is highlighted.

XM® NavTraffic information is displayed on the map.

▶ **On Map screen**

▶ **On Freeway information screen**

1 XM® NavTraffic icon

When any traffic information has been received, the XM® NavTraffic icon will appear on the map screen. Selecting the XM® NavTraffic icon on the screen will start voice guidance for the traffic information. (See page 44.)

INFORMATION

When the XM® NavTraffic icon is selected, voice guidance for the traffic information will start even if "Off" for "Traffic Voice Guidance" is selected.

2 XM® NavTraffic information arrow

When any XM® NavTraffic information has been received, the XM® NavTraffic information arrow will appear on the map screen. The color of the arrow changes depending on the traffic information received.

"Orange": Heavy congestion

"Yellow": Moderate traffic

"Green": Freely flowing traffic

3 XM® NavTraffic indicator

When any XM® NavTraffic information has been received, the XM® NavTraffic indicator will appear on the screen. The color of the indicator changes depending on the traffic information received.

“White”: Traffic information has been received.

“Yellow”: Traffic restriction information on the guidance route has been received (screen button*).

“Orange”: Congestion information on the guidance route has been received (screen button*).

*: Selecting the XM® NavTraffic indicator will start voice guidance.

Lexus Insider

Lexus Insider is an optional service that can send audio messages, or articles, to participating owners’ vehicles via the navigation system. Potential Lexus Insider subjects might include, for example, Lexus vehicle technology tips, updates on regional Lexus events, or audio excerpts from Lexus Magazine articles. Up to 20 articles can be stored at a time.

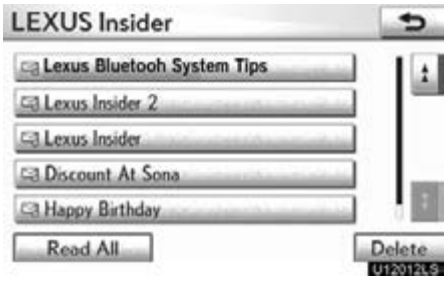
You may opt out of receiving Lexus Insider messages at any time. (See page 181.)

- **View and play received Lexus Insider messages**

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Info. / Phone".

2. Select "LEXUS Insider".

"LEXUS Insider" screen is displayed on the screen.

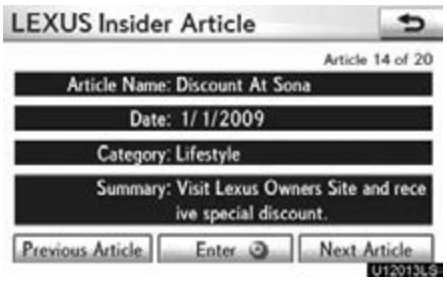


3. Select the desired article title from the Lexus Insider menu to play that broadcast or select "Read All" to listen to all stored Lexus Insider broadcasts.

To disrupt the audio read of Lexus Insider, push the **"MODE"** switch on the steering wheel or push the **"AM·FM"**, **"SAT"**, **"DISC", "CD"** or **"AUX·USB"** button on the audio system.

Icons appear at the left of the Lexus Insider story titles and indicate the following:

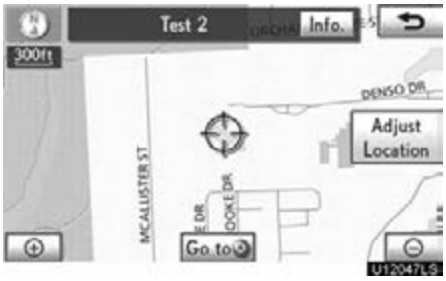
Icon	Article
	Unread article
	Previously read article
	Article with downloadable Point of Interest (POI)



After selecting an individual article, you can then select **"Next Article"** or **"Previous Article"** to listen to another article.

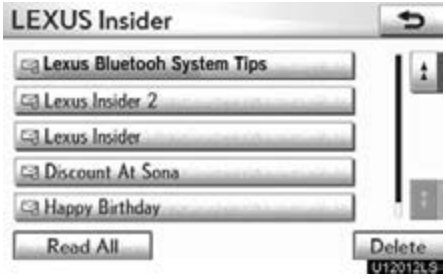
You can also use the "∧" or "∨" switch on the steering wheel to move to the previous or next article.

Some Lexus Insider stories will contain a downloadable POI relevant to the content. If it contains a POI, you can select **"Enter ⦿"** to download it to the navigation system.

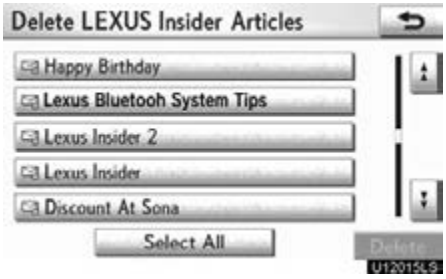


You can select the **"Go to ⦿"** button to set the POI as a destination with route directions.

DELETE LEXUS INSIDER ARTICLE



1. Select “Delete” on the “LEXUS Insider” screen.



2. Select the individual article title that you would like to delete or “Select All”.

3. Select “Delete”.

- **New article notification**

When the vehicle is first powered on and a new Lexus Insider article is available, a notification will appear on the navigation screen.

The notice will appear for only approximately 6 seconds unless you choose one of the options listed.

When the new article notification appears, you can select any of the following options.

“Listen Now”:
Plays newly received Lexus Insider article(s).

“Ignore”:
Removes notification screen without playing new articles.

“Remind Me Later”:
Removes notification screen without playing articles. Notification will be displayed again when the vehicle is next powered on.

- **Lexus Insider settings**

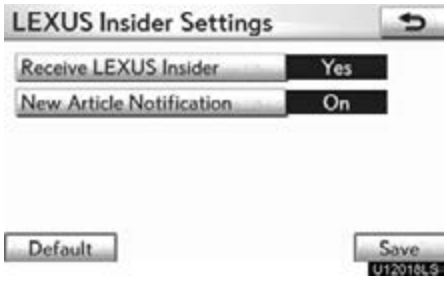
To change Lexus Insider settings, notification, and opt in or out of article receipt.

1. Push the "MENU" button on the side of the Remote Touch and then select "Setup".

2. Select "Other".

3. Select "LEXUS Insider".

"LEXUS Insider settings" screen is displayed on the screen.



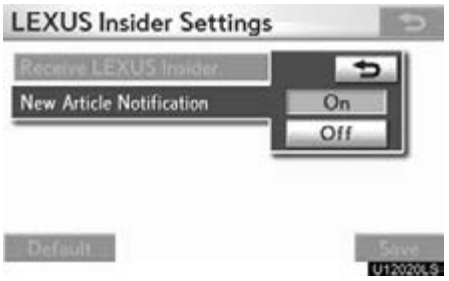
Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

RECEIVE/OPT OUT OF LEXUS INSIDER

1. **Select “Receive LEXUS Insider”.**
2. **Select “Yes” to receive Lexus Insider articles or “No” to opt out of receiving articles.**
3. **Select “Save”.**

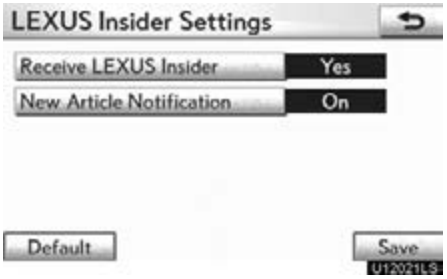
NEW ARTICLE NOTIFICATION

Automatic notification of new Lexus Insider articles is available and is the default setting.



1. **Select “New Article Notification”.**
2. **Select “On” or “Off”.**
3. **Select “Save”.**

RESTORE THE DEFAULT LEXUS INSIDER SETTINGS



1. Select “Default”.

2. Select “Yes” to confirm or “No” to cancel.

SECTION 7

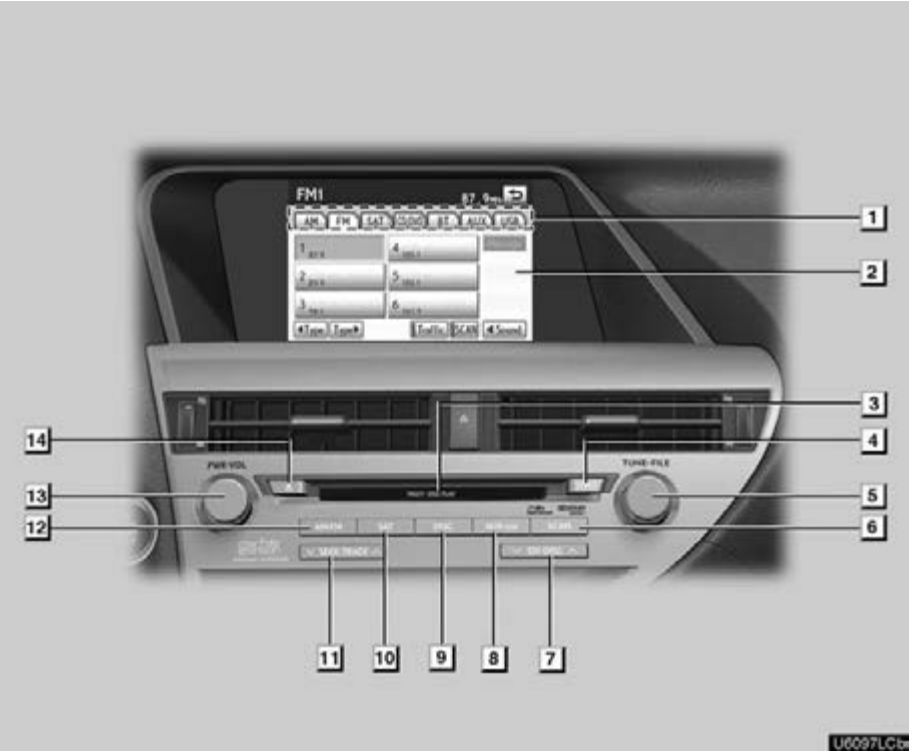
AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

- Quick reference 186
- **Using your audio/video system** 193
  - Some basics 193
  - Radio operation 201
  - Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast) 206
  - CD changer operation 212
  - DVD changer operation 226
  - Bluetooth® audio operation 252
  - USB memory/iPod operation 260
- Audio/video remote controls (steering switches) 268
- **Rear seat entertainment system features** 270
  - Using the radio 276
  - Using the DVD player 277
  - Playing an audio CD/CD text 277
  - Playing WMA/MP3 discs 278
  - Playing DVD video/audio 278
  - Using the video mode 291
  - Changing other settings 292
- Audio/video system operating hints 294

Quick reference

Operations such as selecting a preset station and adjusting the sound balance are carried out on the screen. To display the audio screen, push the **"MENU"** button and select **"Audio"**.

▶DVD changer (Type A)



▶If a Mark Levinson brand audio system is installed, the "Mark Levinson" logo is shown on the panel.

1 **Function menu tab**
To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen tabs. For details, see page 195.

2 **Function menu display screen**
To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen buttons. For details, see page 195.

3 **Disc slot**
Insert discs into the slot after pushing **"LOAD"** button. For details, see page 227.

4 **"LOAD" button**
Push this button to insert the discs. For details, see page 227.

5 **"TUNE·FILE" knob**
Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down. For details, see pages 207, 222 and 265.

6 **"SCAN" button**
Push this button to scan radio stations or scan the files or tracks. For details, see pages 203, 208, 219, 224 and 266.

7 **"CH·DISC" button**
Push the "∧" or "∨" button to select a preset tuning or a selected disc. For details, see page 229.

8 **"AUX·USB" button**
Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on. For details, see pages 195, 201, 252 and 260.

9 **"DISC" button**
Push this button to turn the DVD changer on. For details, see pages 195 and 231.

10 **"SAT" button**
Push this button to choose an SAT station. For details, see pages 195 and 206.

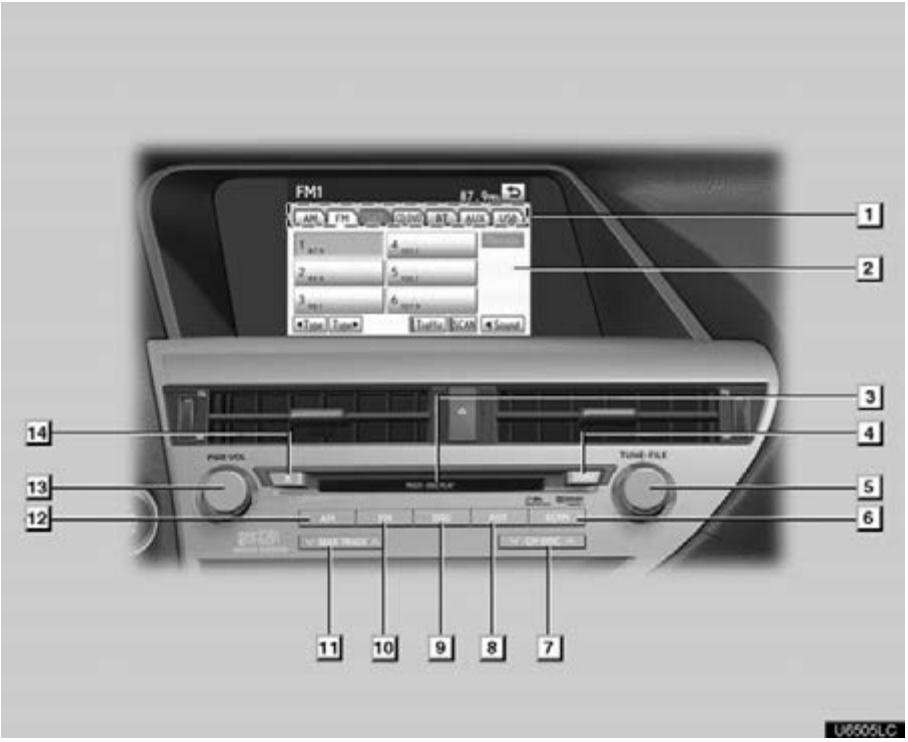
11 **"SEEK·TRACK" button**
Push either side of this button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track, file or chapter. For details, see pages 203, 208, 218, 222, 238, 249, 258 and 264.

12 **"AM·FM" button**
Push this button to choose a radio station. (AM, FM1, FM2)
For details, see pages 195 and 201.

13 **"PWR·VOL" knob**
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 195.

14 **"⏏" button**
Push this button to eject the discs. For details, see page 229.

▶**DVD changer (Type B)**



▶**If a Mark Levinson brand audio system is installed, the "Mark Levinson" logo is shown on the panel.**

1 **Function menu tab**
To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen tabs. For details, see page 195.

2 **Function menu display screen**
To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen buttons. For details, see page 195.

3 **Disc slot**
Insert discs into the slot after pushing **"LOAD"** button. For details, see page 227.

4 **"LOAD" button**
Push this button to insert the discs. For details, see page 227.

5 **"TUNE·FILE" knob**
Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down. For details, see pages 207, 222 and 265.

6 **"SCAN" button**
Push this button to scan radio stations or scan the files or tracks. For details, see pages 203, 208, 219, 224 and 266.

7 **"CH·DISC" button**
Push the "∧" or "∨" button to select a preset tuning or a selected disc. For details, see page 229.

8 **“AUX” button**
Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on. For details, see pages 195, 201, 252 and 260.

9 **“DISC” button**
Push this button to turn the DVD changer on. For details, see pages 195 and 231.

10 **“FM” button**
Push this button to choose an FM station. For details, see pages 195 and 201.

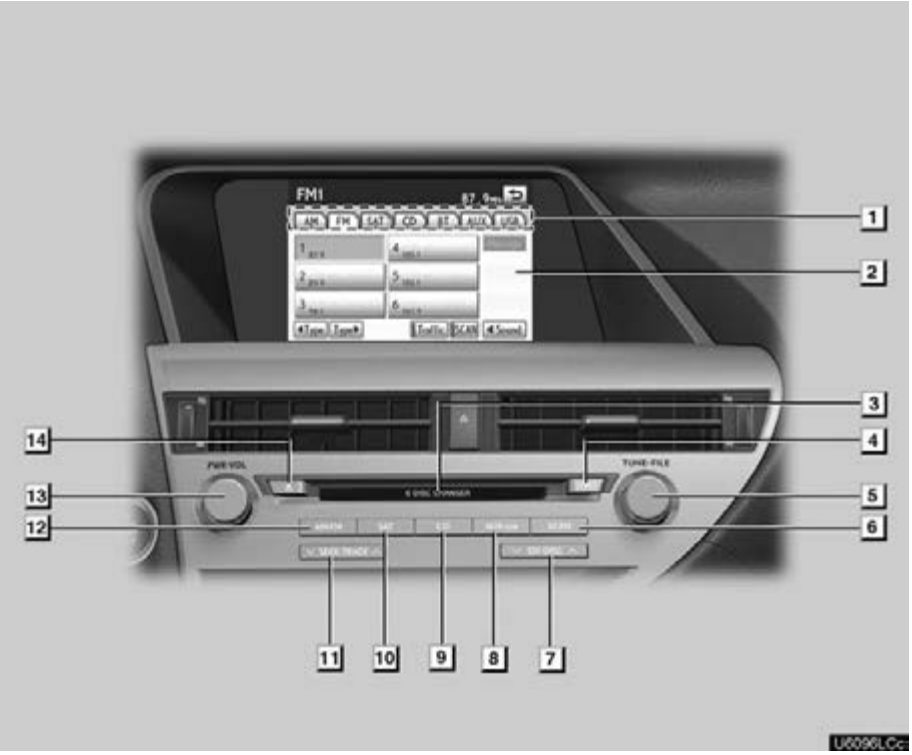
11 **“SEEK·TRACK” button**
Push either side of this button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track, file or chapter. For details, see pages 203, 208, 218, 222, 238, 249, 258 and 264.

12 **“AM” button**
Push this button to choose an AM station. For details, see pages 195 and 201.

13 **“PWR·VOL” knob**
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 195.

14 **“⏏” button**
Push this button to eject the discs. For details, see page 229.

▶CD changer (Type A)



1 **Function menu tab**
To control the radio, CD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen tabs. For details, see page 195.

2 **Function menu display screen**
To control the radio, CD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen buttons. For details, see page 195.

3 **Disc slot**
Insert discs into the slot after pushing **"LOAD"** button. For details, see page 212.

4 **"LOAD" button**
Push this button to insert the discs. For details, see page 212.

5 **"TUNE·FILE" knob**
Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down. For details, see pages 207, 222 and 265.

6 **"SCAN" button**
Push this button to scan radio stations or scan the files or tracks. For details, see pages 203, 208, 219, 224 and 266.

7 **"CH·DISC" button**
Push the "∧" or "∨" button to select a preset tuning or a selected disc. For details, see page 214.

8 **“AUX·USB” button**
Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on. For details, see pages 195, 201, 252 and 260.

9 **“CD” button**
Push this button to turn the CD changer on. For details, see pages 195 and 216.

10 **“SAT” button**
Push this button to choose an SAT station. For details, see pages 195 and 206.

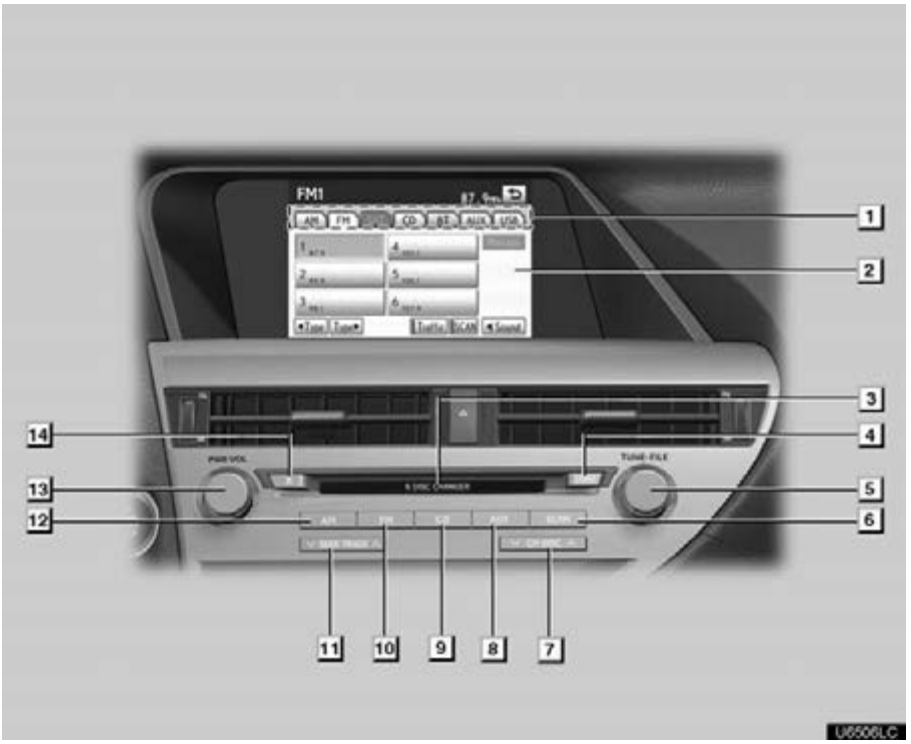
11 **“SEEK·TRACK” button**
Push either side of this button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track, file or chapter. For details, see pages 203, 208, 218, 222, 258 and 264.

12 **“AM·FM” button**
Push this button to choose a radio station. (AM, FM1, FM2)
For details, see pages 195 and 201.

13 **“PWR·VOL” knob**
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 195.

14 **“⏏” button**
Push this button to eject the discs. For details, see page 214.

▶CD changer (Type B)



1 **Function menu tab**
To control the radio, CD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen tabs. For details, see page 195.

2 **Function menu display screen**
To control the radio, CD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, select the screen buttons. For details, see page 195.

3 **Disc slot**
Insert discs into the slot after pushing **"LOAD"** button. For details, see page 212.

4 **"LOAD" button**
Push this button to insert the discs. For details, see page 212.

5 **"TUNE·FILE" knob**
Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down. For details, see pages 207, 222 and 265.

6 **"SCAN" button**
Push this button to scan radio stations or scan the files or tracks. For details, see pages 203, 208, 219, 224 and 266.

7 **"CH·DISC" button**
Push the "∧" or "∨" button to select a preset tuning or a selected disc. For details, see page 214.

8 **"AUX" button**
Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on. For details, see pages 195, 201, 252 and 260.

9 **"CD" button**
Push this button to turn the CD changer on. For details, see pages 195 and 216.

10 **"FM" button**
Push this button to choose an FM station. For details, see pages 195 and 201.

11 **"SEEK·TRACK" button**
Push either side of this button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track, file or chapter. For details, see pages 203, 208, 218, 222, 258 and 264.

12 **"AM" button**
Push this button to choose an AM station. For details, see pages 195 and 201.

13 **"PWR·VOL" knob**
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 195.

14 **"⏏" button**
Push this button to eject the discs. For details, see page 214.

Using your audio/video system — — Some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of your audio/video system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio/video system works when the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is turned to ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

FCC ID : AJDK021
IC : 775E−K021

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS−Gen and RSS−210 of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions : (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Co−location: This transmitter must not be co−located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

- **Laser products**
  - **Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself. This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.**
  - **This product utilizes a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

NOTICE

To prevent the 12−volt battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio/video system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off <the engine is not running>.

(a) Voice command system

By pushing the switch above, you can operate the voice command system.

For the operation of the voice command system and the list of commands, see pages 49 and 54.

(b) Turning the system on and off

"PWR·VOL": Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume. The system turns on in the last mode used.

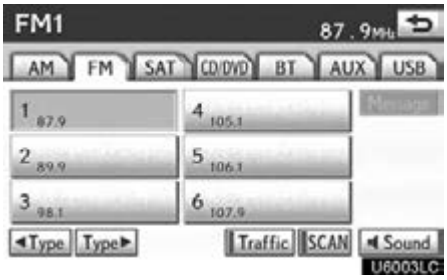
You can select the function that enables automatic return to the previous screen from the audio screen. See page 342 for details.

(c) Switching between functions

▶ DVD changer (Type A) image

Push the "AM·FM", "AM", "FM", "SAT", "DISC", "CD", "AUX·USB" or "AUX" button to turn on the desired mode.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Audio".

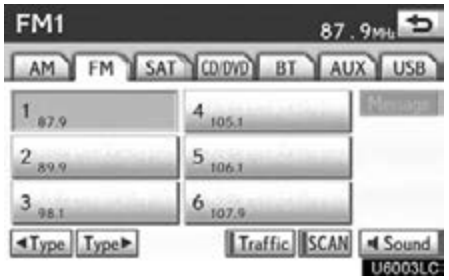


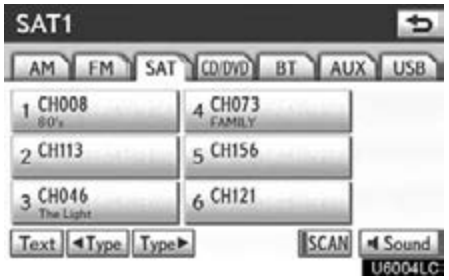
2. Select "AM", "FM", "SAT", "CD", "CD/DVD", "BT", "AUX" or "USB" tab to turn on the desired mode.

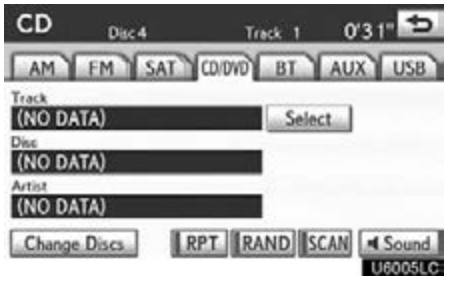
Push these buttons or tabs if you want to switch from one mode to another.

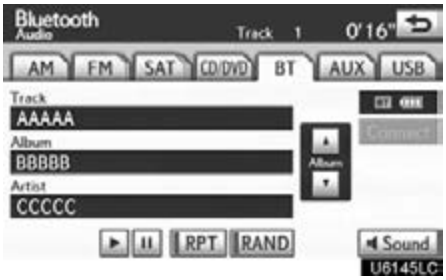
If the disc is not set, the CD changer/DVD changer does not turn on.

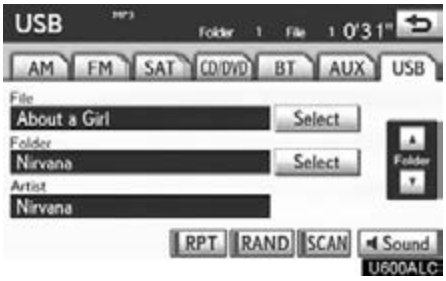
You can turn off the CD changer/DVD changer by ejecting all the discs. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject all the discs.

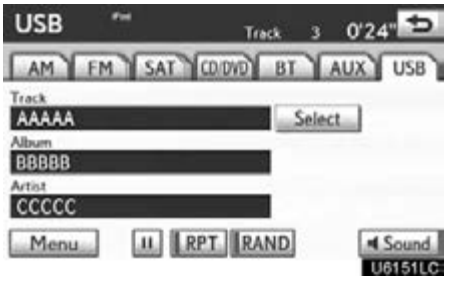












The screen buttons for radio, CD changer, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory and iPod operation are displayed on the screen when the audio control mode is selected.

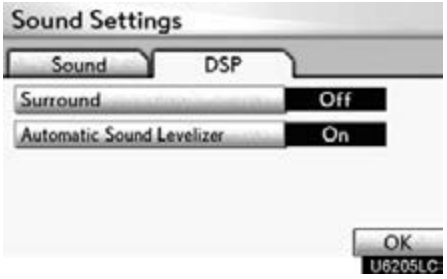
Select the tab to select the desired mode when the audio control mode is selected.

INFORMATION
You cannot operate dimmed screen buttons.

(d) DSP control

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Audio”.

2. Select “Sound” to display the sound adjustment screen.



3. Select “DSP” tab to display this screen.

4. Select the desired button.

Surround function:
Select “On” of “Surround” and select “OK”.
The surround function will turn on.

Automatic sound levelizer (ASL):
When the audio sound becomes difficult to hear due to road noise, wind noise or other noises while driving, select **“On”**. The system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to the speed of car, wind noise or other noise.

(e) Tone and balance

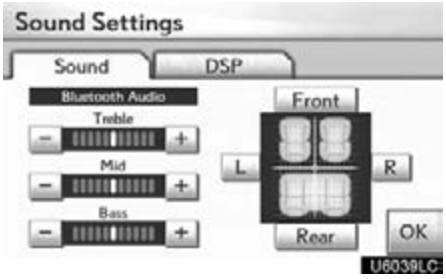
Tone

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, mid and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, mid and bass.

Balance

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is also important.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.



1. Select “Sound” tab to display this screen.

2. Select the desired button.

“Treble” “+” or “−”: Adjust high−pitched tones.

“Mid” “+” or “−”: Adjust mid−pitched tones.

“Bass” “+” or “−”: Adjusts low−pitched tones.

“Front” or “Rear”: Adjusts sound balance between the front and rear speakers.

“L” or “R”: Adjusts sound balance between the left and right speakers.

3. Select “OK”.

The tone of each mode (for such as AM, FM, CD changer and DVD changer) can be adjusted.

(f) Selecting screen size (DVD changer only)

Before selecting screen size, it is necessary to insert a DVD disc and select DVD mode.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Audio”.

2. Select “CD/DVD” tab.

3. Select “Settings”.

4. Select “Wide”.

5. Select the desired button.

"Normal": Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black.

"Wide 1": Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen.

"Wide 2": Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

6. Select "OK".

(g) Your CD or DVD changer

When you insert a disc, push the **"LOAD"** button and gently push the disc in with the label side up. This CD or DVD changer can store up to six discs.

The changer is intended for use with 4.7 in. (12 cm) discs only.

NOTICE

- ***Do not stack up two discs for insertion, or it will cause damage to the changer. Insert only one disc into the slot at a time.***
- ***Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the changer. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.***

(h) AUX port

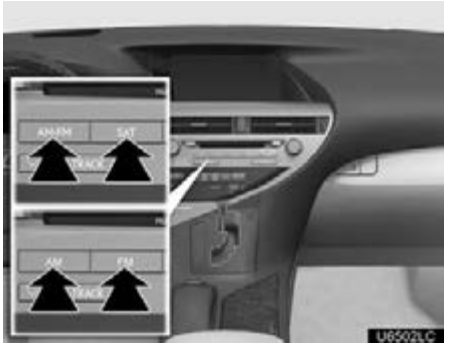
The sound of portable audio players connected to the AUX port can be enjoyed. Push the **"AUX·USB"** or **"AUX"** button to display audio screen and select **"AUX"** tab to switch to AUX mode. When the portable audio player is not connected to the AUX port, the tab will tone down. For details, refer to the *"Owner's Manual"*.

(i) USB port

It is available to connect a USB memory/iPod with the USB port. When the USB memory/iPod is not connected with the USB port, the tab will tone down. For details, see "(a) Connecting a USB memory or iPod" on page 260.

— Radio operation

(a) Listening to the radio



Push the "AM·FM", "AM" or "FM" button to display audio screen and select "AM" or "FM" tab to choose either an AM or FM station.

"AM", "FM1" or "FM2" appears on the screen.

If your vehicle is equipped with a satellite radio broadcast system, when you push the **"SAT"** button or select **"SAT"** tab on audio screen, "SAT1", "SAT2", "SAT3" station appears on the display. For details about satellite radio broadcast, see "—Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast)" on page 206.

Turn the knob clockwise to step up the station band or counterclockwise to step down.

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. “ST” appears on the screen. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, “ST” disappears from the screen.

(b) Presetting a station

1. Tune in the desired station.

2. Select one of the buttons (1 — 6) you want and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the station to the button and the frequency appears on the button.

Each radio mode (AM, FM1 or FM2) can store up to 6 stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by 12−volt battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

(c) Selecting a station

Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.

Preset tuning: Select the button (1 — 6) for the station you want. The button is highlighted and the station frequency appears on the screen.

Seek tuning: Push the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button on either side. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

To scan all the frequencies: Push the **"SCAN"** button or select **"SCAN"** on the screen briefly. "SCAN" appears on the screen. The radio will find the next station and stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, Push the **"SCAN"** button or select **"SCAN"** again.

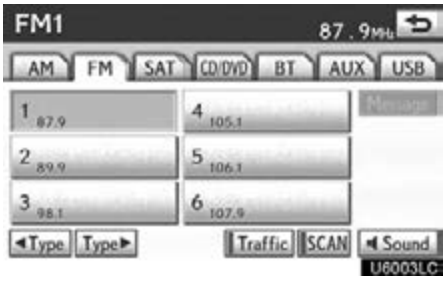
To scan the preset stations: Push the **"SCAN"** button or select **"SCAN"** on the screen for longer than a second. "P. SCAN" appears on the screen. The radio will tune in the next preset station, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, push the **"SCAN"** button or select **"SCAN"** again.

(d) Radio Data System

Your audio system is equipped with Radio Data Systems (RDS). RDS mode provides you to receive text messages from radio stations that utilize RDS transmitters.

When RDS is on, the radio can
— only select stations of a particular program type,
— display messages from radio stations,
— search for a stronger signal station.

RDS features are available for use only on FM stations which broadcast RDS information.

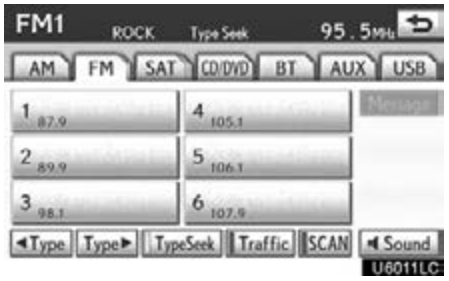


"Type ◀ ▶"

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO–PTY" appears on the display.

Each time you select **"◀ Type "** or **"Type ▶"**, the program type changes as in the following:

- ROCK
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- INFORM (Information)
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- RELIGION
- ALART (Emergency message)



"TypeSeek"

When a program is set, "Type Seek" appears. Select the button and the system starts to seek the station in the relevant program type.

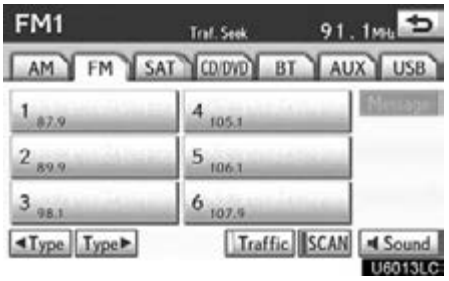
If any type program station is not found, "Nothing" appears on the display.

“Message”

If the system receives a radio text from RDS station, “MSG” appears on the display. Select **“Message”**, and a text message is displayed on the screen. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

When you select **“Message Off”**, the display returns.

(e) Traffic announcement



“Traffic”

A station that regularly broadcasts traffic information is automatically located.

When you select **“Traffic”**, “Traf. Seek” appears on the display and the radio will start seeking any traffic program station.

If no traffic program station is found, “Nothing” appears on the display.

If a traffic program station is found, the name for traffic program station is displayed for a while until a traffic announcement is received.

— Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast)

▶ **Type A only**

To listen to a satellite radio broadcast in your vehicle, a subscription to the XM® Satellite Radio service is necessary.

(a) How to subscribe to an XM® Satellite Radio

An XM® Satellite Radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provided under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous U.S. states and some Canadian provinces.

How to subscribe:

You must enter into a separate service agreement with the XM® Satellite Radio in order to receive satellite broadcast programming in the vehicle. Additional activation and service subscription fees apply that are not included in the purchase price of the vehicle and optional digital satellite tuner.

For complete information on subscription rates and terms, or to subscribe to the XM® Satellite Radio.

U.S.A.—
Visit on the web at www.siriusxm.com or call 1–877–515–3987.

Canada—
Visit on the web at www.xmradio.ca or call 1–877–438–9677.

The XM® Satellite Radio is solely responsible for the quality, availability and content of the satellite radio services provided, which are subject to the terms and conditions of the XM® Satellite Radio customer service agreement.

Customers should have their radio ID ready; the radio ID can be found by tuning to “channel 000” on the radio. For details, see “(b) Displaying the radio ID” below.

All fees and programming are the responsibility of the XM® Satellite Radio and are subject to change.

Satellite tuner technology notice:
Lexus’s satellite radio tuners are awarded Type Approval Certificates from XM® Satellite Radio Inc. as proof of compatibility with the services offered by the XM® Satellite Radio.

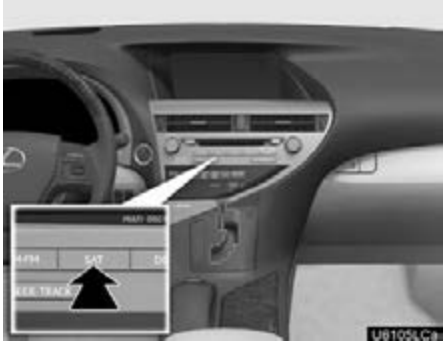
(b) Displaying the radio ID

Each XM® tuner is identified with a unique radio ID. You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or when reporting a problem.

If you select the “CH 000” using the **“TUNE·FILE”** knob, the ID code of 8 alphanumeric characters appears. If you select another channel, display of the ID code is canceled. The channel(000) alternates the display between the radio ID and the specific radio ID code.

INFORMATION
Cargo loaded on the roof luggage carrier, especially metal objects, may adversely affect the reception of XM® Satellite Radio.

(c) Listening to satellite radio



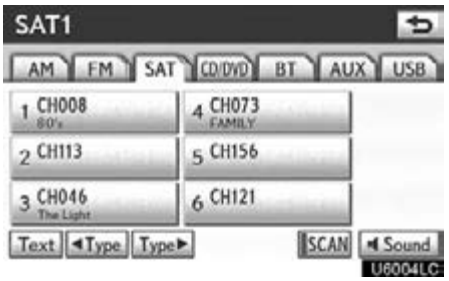
Push the “SAT” button to display audio screen and select “SAT” tab to choose a SAT channel.

“SAT1”, “SAT2” or “SAT3” appears on the screen.

Turn this knob to select the next or previous channel.

If you turn continuously, you can rapidly scroll forward or down through the channels.

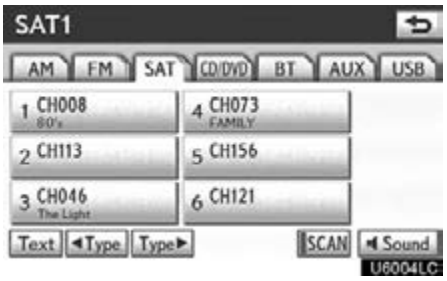
(d) Channel category



Select either **“◀ Type”** or **“Type ▶”** to go to the next or previous category.

(e) Presetting a channel

1. Tune in the desired channel.



2. Select one of the channel selector buttons (1 — 6) and hold it until a beep is heard.

This sets the channels to the button and the name and number of the channel appears on the button.

Each button can store three SAT channels. To change the preset channel to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset channel memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by 12–volt battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

(f) Selecting a channel

Tune in the desired channel using one of the following methods.

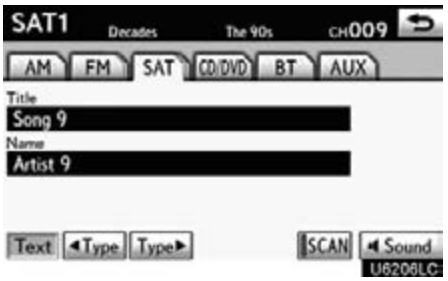
Preset tuning: Select the channel selector button (1 — 6) for the channel you want. The button (1 — 6) is highlighted and channel number appears on the display.

To select channel within the current category: Push the "∧" or "∨" button of **"SEEK·TRACK"**. The radio will step up or down the channel within the current channel category.

To scan the currently selected channel category: Select **"SCAN"** or push the **"SCAN"** button briefly. "SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will find the next channel in the same channel category, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a channel, select **"SCAN"** or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time.

To scan the preset channels: Select **"SCAN"** or push the **"SCAN"** button and hold it until you hear a beep. "P.SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will find the next preset channel, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset channel. To select a channel, select **"SCAN"** or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time.

(g) Displaying the title and name



When you select **"Text"**, the song/program title and the artist name/feature are displayed.

Up to 16 alphanumeric characters can be displayed. (Some information will not be fully displayed.)

When you select **"Text"** again, the display returns.

(h) If the satellite radio tuner malfunctions

When problems occur with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the display. Referring to the table below to identify the problem, take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely.
	A short circuit occurs in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer for assistance.
UNAUTH	You have not subscribed to the XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose the “CH000” and all free–to–air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or “CH001”. If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM® Satellite Radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
–––––	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.
CHUNAVL	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or “CH001”. If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at 1–877–515–3987 (U.S.A.) or 1–877–438–9677 (Canada).

NOTICE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

—Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

—Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

—Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

—Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Information to user

Alternation or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.

INFORMATION

This XM® tuner supports "Audio Services" (Music and Talk) of only XM® Satellite Radio and "Text Information"* linked to the respective "Audio Services".

****: Text Information includes, Station Name, (Artist) Name, (Song) Title and Category Name.***

— CD changer operation

(a) Inserting discs

The “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch must be in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

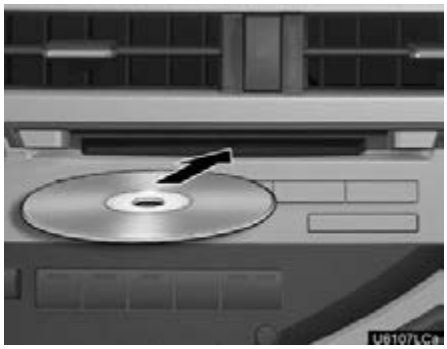
Your CD changer can store up to 6 discs.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

- **Setting a single disc:**

1. Push the “LOAD” button briefly.

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the CD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the CD changer door is open.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, “Check CD” appears on the screen.

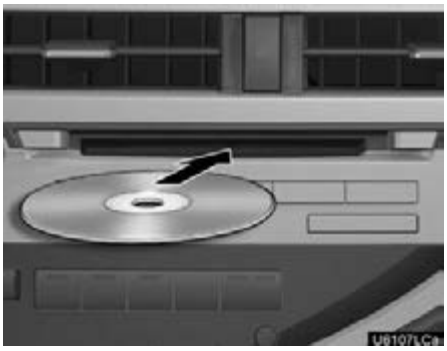
If you do not insert the disc within 15 seconds after pushing the **“LOAD”** button, a beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

- **Setting all the discs:**

1. Push the “LOAD” button until you hear a beep.

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the CD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the CD changer door is open.

The CD changer door closes and the orange indicators start blinking.

3. Insert the next disc after the orange indicators change to green and stay on and the CD changer door opens.

4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

To cancel the operation, push the **"LOAD"** button briefly.

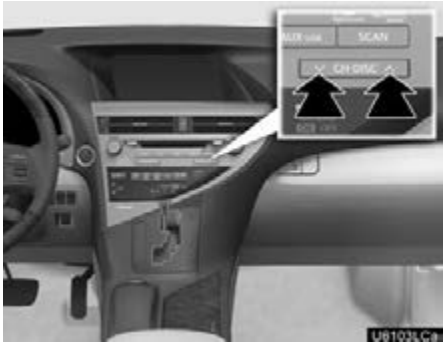
If you do not insert the discs within 15 seconds after pushing the **"LOAD"** button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

NOTICE

Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the changer.

(b) Ejecting discs

- **A single disc alone:**



1. Push the "∧" or "∨" button of "CH·DISC" or select the disc number button on the "Change Discs" screen to highlight the disc number you want to eject.

To display the "Change Discs" screen, select **"Change Discs"** on each audio control screen.

2. Push the "⏏" button for the disc briefly.

At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and the disc is ejected.

3. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

- **Ejecting all the discs:**

1. Push the "⏏" button for the disc until you hear a beep.

At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and a disc is ejected.

2. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

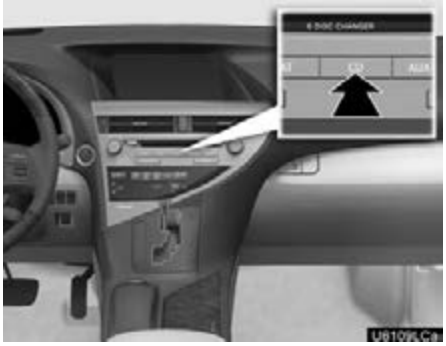
The indicators start blinking again and the next disc is ejected.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds after it is ejected, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

When all the discs are removed, the indicators go out.

The numbers of the trays where the disc is not set are dimmed.

(c) Playing a disc



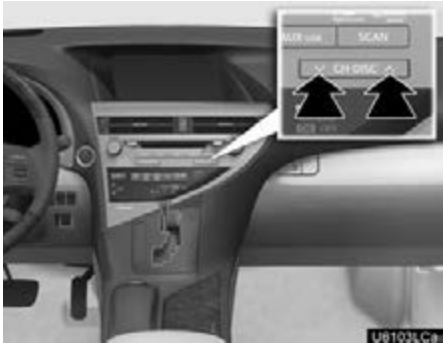
Push the “CD” button to display audio screen and select “CD” tab if the discs are already loaded in the changer.

The discs set in the changer are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the screen.

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The changer will skip any empty disc trays.

(d) Selecting a desired disc



On the screen:

Select "CD" tab and select "Change Discs"

The selected disc number is highlighted.

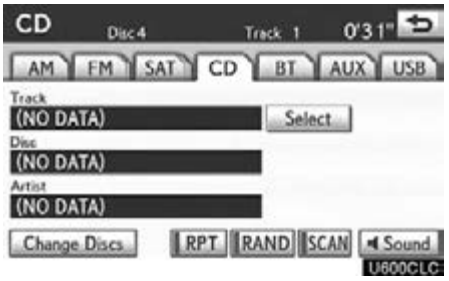
The changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

On the audio panel:

Push the "∧" or "∨" button of "CH·DISC".

When you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

(e) Playing an audio disc



Select "CD" tab, then select "Change Discs". Choose an audio disc number to display this screen.

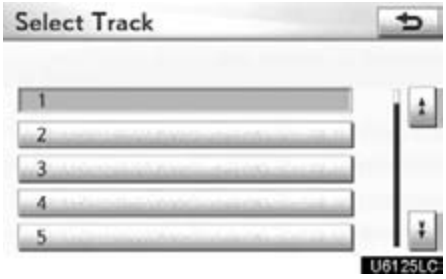
SELECTING A DESIRED TRACK

"SEEK·TRACK" button: Use for direct access to a desired track.

Push either side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and repeat it until the desired track number appears on the screen. As you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

"Select" for Track: The desired track can be selected from a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Select **"Select"**. The track list is displayed.



Select the desired track number. The changer will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

: By selecting this button, the list moves up by 5 track groups. If this button is selected when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By selecting this button, the list moves down by 5 track groups. If this button is selected when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

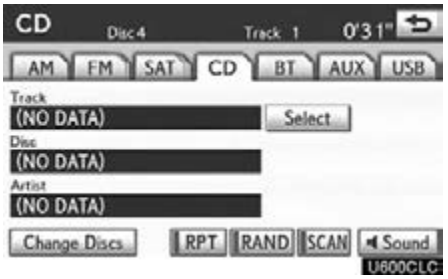
▶, ◀: If ▶ appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display.

Select ▶ to scroll to the end of the name. Select ◀ to scroll the beginning of the name.

Fast forward: Push **"∧"** side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing from that position.

Reverse: Push **"∨"** side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing.

SEARCHING FOR A DESIRED TRACK OR DISC



Searching for a desired track —

Select "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button briefly while the disc is playing.

"SCAN" appears on the screen. The changer will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, select **"SCAN"** on the screen or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time. If the changer reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

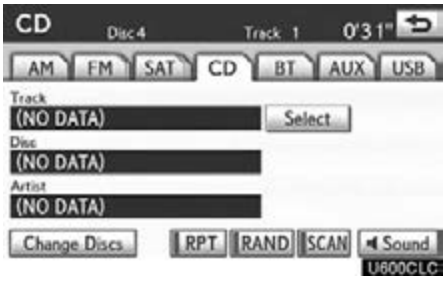
Searching for a desired disc —

Select "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button for longer than a second while the disc is playing.

"D.SCAN" appears on the screen. The program at the beginning of each audio disc will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, select **"SCAN"** on the screen or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time.

After all the audio discs are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

OTHER FUNCTIONS



"RPT": Use it for automatic repeat of the track or disc you are currently listening to.

Repeating a track —

Select **"RPT"** briefly while the track is playing. "RPT" appears on the screen. When the track is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the track and play the track again. To cancel it, select **"RPT"** once again.

Repeating a disc —

Select **"RPT"** for longer than a second while the disc is playing. "D.RPT" appears on the screen. When the disc is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the disc and play the disc again. To cancel it, select **"RPT"** once again.

"RAND": Use it for automatic and random selection.

Playing the tracks on one disc in random order —

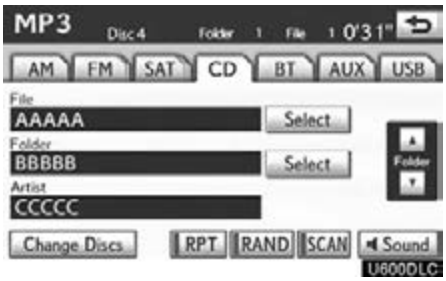
Select **"RAND"** briefly while the disc is playing. "RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a track on the disc being listened to in random order. To cancel it, select **"RAND"** once again.

Playing the tracks on all the audio discs in random order —

Select **"RAND"** for longer than a second while the disc is playing. "D.RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a track on all the audio discs in the changer in random order. To cancel it, select **"RAND"** once again.

If a CD−TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 letters can be displayed.

(f) Playing a MP3/WMA disc



Select "CD" tab, then select "Change Discs". Choose an MP3/WMA disc number to display this screen.

SELECTING A DESIRED FOLDER

"Folder▲": Select this button to go to the next folder.

"Folder▼": Select this button to go to the previous folder.

"Select" for Folder: The desired folder can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Select **"Select"**. The folder list is displayed.

Select the desired folder number. The changer will start playing the first file of the selected folder.

: By selecting this button, the list moves up by 5 folder groups. If this button is selected when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By selecting this button, the list moves down by 5 folder groups. If this button is selected when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

SELECTING A DESIRED FILE

"SEEK·TRACK" button: Use for direct access to a desired file.

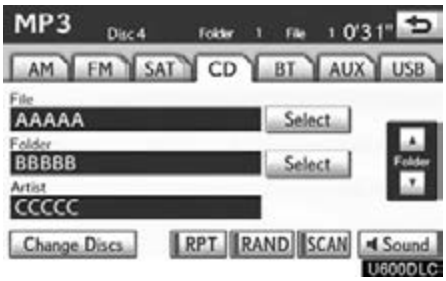
Push either side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and repeat it until the desired file number appears on the display. As you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected file from the beginning. When "RAND" or "FLD.RPT" is on, the file number within the folder you are currently listening to appears.

Fast forward: Push **"∧"** side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing from that position.

Reverse: Push **"∨"** side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing.

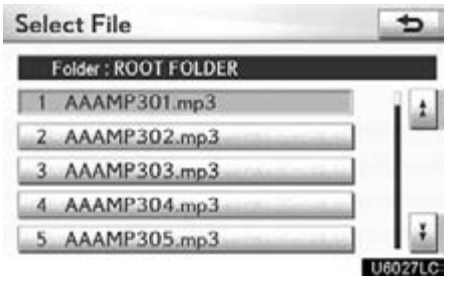
"TUNE·FILE" knob: Use for direct access to a desired file in the disc.

Turn the **"TUNE·FILE"** knob to step up or down all the files in the disc you are currently listening to. The file number appears on the display. When "RAND" or "FLD.RPT" is on, all the files in the folder you are currently listening to can be stepped up or down.



"Select" for File: The desired file can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Select **"Select"**. The file list is displayed.

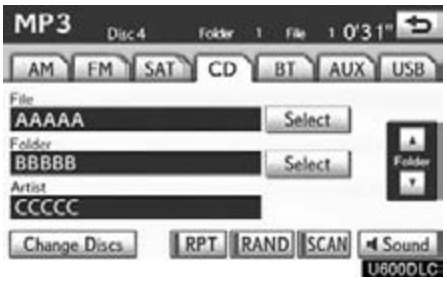


Select the desired file number. The changer will start playing the selected file from the beginning.

: By selecting this button, the list moves up by 5 file groups. If this button is selected when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By selecting this button, the list moves down by 5 file groups. If this button is selected when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

SEARCHING FOR A DESIRED FILE

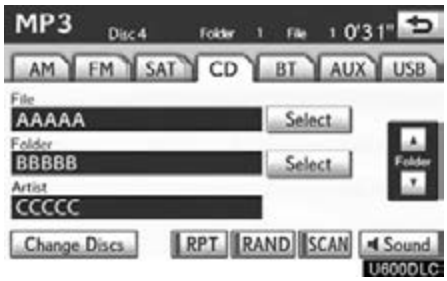


Select "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button briefly while the disc is playing.

"SCAN" appears on the screen. The changer will play the next file in the folder for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a file, select **"SCAN"** on the screen or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time. If the changer reaches the end of the folder, it will continue scanning from file 1.

After all the files are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

SEARCHING FOR A DESIRED FOLDER

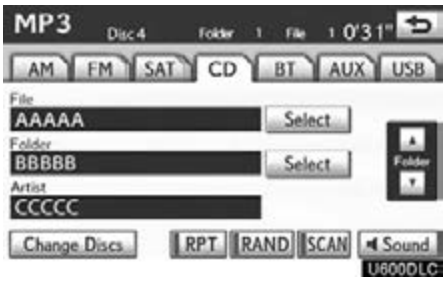


Select "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button for longer than a second while the disc is playing.

"FLD.SCAN" appears on the screen. The program at the beginning of each folder will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, select **"SCAN"** on the screen or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time.

After all the folders are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

OTHER FUNCTIONS



"RPT": Use it for automatic repeat of the file or folder you are currently listening to.

Repeating a file —

Select **"RPT"** briefly while the file is playing. "RPT" appears on the screen. When the file is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the file and play the file again. To cancel it, select **"RPT"** once again.

Repeating a folder —

Select **"RPT"** for longer than a second while the folder is playing. "FLD.RPT" appears on the screen. When the folder is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the folder and play the folder again. To cancel it, select **"RPT"** once again.

"RAND": Use it for automatic and random selection of the folder or the disc which you are currently listening to.

Playing the files in one folder in random order —

Select **"RAND"** briefly while the disc is playing. "RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file in the folder you are currently listening to. To cancel it, select **"RAND"** once again.

Playing the files in all the folders on one disc in random order —

Select **"RAND"** for longer than a second while the disc is playing. "FLD.RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file in all the folders. To cancel it, select **"RAND"** once again.

When a file is skipped or the system is inoperative, select **"RAND"** to reset.

(g) If the changer malfunctions

If “CD error” appears on the screen, audio signals of the disc cannot be read or the system has trouble. Push the **“CD”** button once again.

If the changer does not operate, check that the disc surface is not soiled or damaged. If the disc is O.K., the temperature of the changer’s internal mechanism may be raised because of high external temperature. Remove the disc from the changer to cool it.

If the changer still does not operate, have it checked by your dealer.

If an MP3/WMA disc contains CD−DA files, only CD−DA files are played. If an MP3/WMA disc contains files other than CD−DA, only MP3/WMA files are played.

— DVD changer operation

For safety reasons, you can enjoy DVD video discs, DVD audio discs and video CDs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, you can hear audio alone even in the DVD video, DVD audio or video CD mode.

(a) Inserting discs

The “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch must be in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

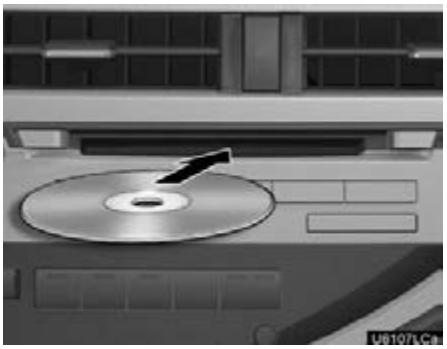
Your DVD changer can store up to 6 discs.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

- **Setting a single disc:**

1. Push the “LOAD” button briefly.

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the DVD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the DVD changer door is open.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, “Check disc ×” appears on the screen.

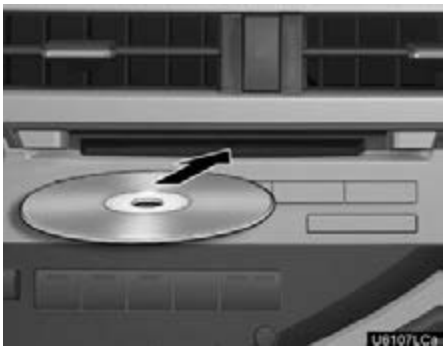
If you do not insert the disc within 15 seconds after pushing the **“LOAD”** button, a beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

- **Setting all the discs:**

1. Push the “LOAD” button until you hear a beep.

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the DVD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the DVD changer door is open.

The DVD changer door closes and the orange indicators start blinking.

3. Insert the next disc after the orange indicators change to green and stay on and the DVD changer door opens.

4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

To cancel the operation, push the **"LOAD"** button briefly.

If you do not insert the discs within 15 seconds after pushing the **"LOAD"** button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

NOTICE

Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the changer.

(b) Ejecting discs

- **A single disc alone:**

1. Push the "∧" or "∨" button of "CH·DISC" or select the disc number button on the "Change Discs" screen to highlight the disc number you want to eject.

To display the "Change Discs" screen, select **"Change Discs"** on each audio control screen.

2. Push the "⏏" button for the disc briefly.

At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and the disc is ejected.

3. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

- **Ejecting all the discs:**

1. Push the "⏏" button for the disc until you hear a beep.

At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and a disc is ejected.

2. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

The indicators start blinking again and the next disc is ejected.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds after it is ejected, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

When all the discs are removed, the indicators go out.

The numbers of the trays where the disc is not set are dimmed.

(c) Playing a disc

Push the "DISC" button to display audio screen and select "CD/DVD" tab if the discs are already loaded in the changer.

The discs set in the changer are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track or title and chapter number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the screen.

Audio CD only —

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The changer will skip any empty disc trays.

(d) Selecting a desired disc

On the screen:

Select "CD/DVD" tab and select "Change Discs".

The selected disc number is highlighted.

The changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

On the audio panel:

Push the "∧" or "∨" button of "CH·DISC".

When you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

(e) Operating a DVD disc

NOTE: The playback condition of some DVD discs may be determined by a DVD software producer. This DVD changer plays a disc as the software producer intended. So some functions may not work properly. Be sure to read the instruction manual for the DVD disc separately provided. For the detailed information about DVD video discs, see "(h) DVD player and DVD video disc information" on page 250.

Precautions on DVD video disc

When recording with a DVD video or video CD, audio tracks may not record in some cases while the menu is displayed. As audio will not play in this case, verify that the video tracks are playing and then activate playback.

When playback of a disc is completed:

- If an audio CD or MP3/WMA disc is playing, the first track or file starts.
- If a DVD video or video CD is playing, playback will stop or the menu screen will be displayed.

The title/chapter number and playback time display may not appear while playing back certain DVD video discs.

⚠ CAUTION

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. The louder sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

This screen appears when the video screen is first displayed after the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

PLAYING A DVD DISC

Select "CD/DVD" tab to display this screen.

Select **"Settings"** on "CD/DVD" screen and select **"Wide"** on "Settings" screen. The screen mode can be changed.

If you select **"Full Screen"** when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns.

DVD SETTINGS

▶ **DVD video**

▶ **DVD audio**

If you select **"Settings"** on "DVD" screen, "Settings" screen appears.

DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO SETTINGS

"DVD Video Settings": The initial set up screen appears. (See page 242.)

"Search": The title search screen appears. (See page 238.)

"Return": Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

"Audio": The audio changing screen appears. (See page 240.)

"Subtitle": The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 240.)

"Angle": The angle selection screen appears. (See page 241.)

"Wide": The screen mode screen appears. (See page 199.)

DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO SETTINGS

"DVD Audio Settings": The initial set up screen appears. (See page 242.)

"Search": The group search screen appears.

"Return": Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

"Audio": The audio changing screen appears. (See page 241.)

"Subtitle": The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 240.)

"Angle": The angle selection screen appears. (See page 241.)

"Wide": The screen mode screen appears. (See page 199.)

"Prev. Page": Select this button to reverse the pages. (See page 239.)

"Next Page": Select this button to forward the pages. (See page 239.)

"Select Number": The track or number search screen appears. (See page 249.)

"RPT": Select this button to repeat a track.

"RAND": Select this button to play the track in one group in random order.

"SCAN": Select this button to play the next track in the group for 10 seconds, then scan again.

DISPLAYING DVD CONTROLS

▶ **DVD video**

▶ **DVD audio**

If you select , while watching video, DVD controls will appear.

If "⃠" appears on the screen when you select a control, the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO CONTROLS

"Menu" and "Top Menu": If you select any of the above controls, the menu screen for DVD video appears. (For the operation, see the manual that comes with the DVD video disc provided separately.)

: The menu control key appears on the screen. (See page 237.)

: Selecting this will pause the video screen.

: Selecting this will fast reverse during playback.

: Selecting this will stop the video screen.

: Selecting this will resume normal play during pause.

: Selecting this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO CONTROLS

"Top Menu": If you select this button, the menu screen for DVD audio appears. (For the operation, see the manual that comes with the DVD audio disc provided separately.)

: The menu control key appears on the screen. (See page 237.)

: Selecting this will pause the disc.

: Selecting this will fast reverse during playback.

: Selecting this will stop the disc.

: Selecting this will resume normal play during pause.

: Selecting this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

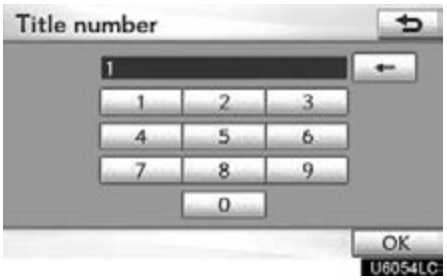
SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Enter the menu item using , , and and select "Enter". The player starts playing disc for that menu item. Menu items can also be selected using the pointer. (For details, see the manual that comes with the DVD disc provided separately.)

When you select the any point on the screen, the controls will disappear. To display them again, select the any point on the screen.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

SEARCHING BY TITLE



DVD video only—

Enter the title number and select "OK". The player starts playing video for that title number.

When you push either side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button, you can select a chapter.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

When you select ⮌, the previous screen returns.

SEARCHING BY GROUP

DVD audio only —

Enter the group number and select "OK". The player starts playing the disc for that group number.

When you push either side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button, you can select a track.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

When you select ⮌, the previous screen returns.

SELECTING THE BONUS GROUP

DVD audio only —

Enter the bonus group number on the searching group screen and select "OK".

The "Enter Key Code" screen will appear. To enter the number of the group you want to play, select the group number.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

When you select ⮌, the previous screen returns.

Select "OK" on the screen.

The player starts playing the disc from the selected bonus group number.

CHANGING THE PAGE

DVD audio only —

Select "Prev. Page" or "Next Page" on the screen to forward or reverse the pages.

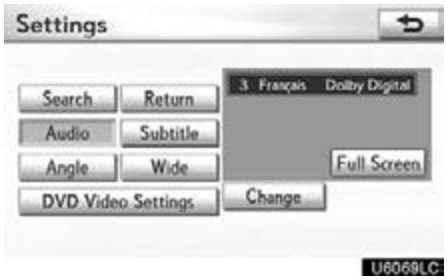
CHANGING THE SUBTITLE LANGUAGE

Each time you select "Change", the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select **"Hide"**, the subtitle can be hidden.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

CHANGING THE AUDIO LANGUAGE



DVD video only —

Each time you select "Change", the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

CHANGING THE AUDIO FORMAT

DVD audio only —

Each time you select “Change”, another audio format stored on the disc is selected.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

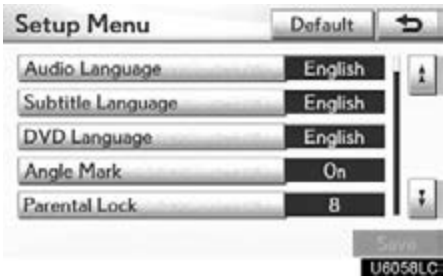
CHANGING THE ANGLE

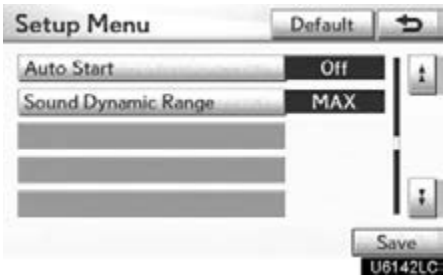
The angle can be selected for discs that are multi−angle compatible when the angle mark appears on the screen.

Each time you select “Change”, the angle is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select , and the previous screen returns.

SETUP MENU





There are initial setting buttons on the "Setup Menu" screen.

After you change the initial setting, select . The initial setting screen will be turned off and return to the picture previously.

When **"Default"** is selected, all menus are initialized.

The initial setting can be changed.

- **Audio language**

You can change the audio language.

1. Select "Audio Language".

2. Select the language you want to hear on the "Audio Language" screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to hear on this screen, select **"Other"** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following "ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE".

To return to the "Setup Menu" screen, select .

- **Subtitle language**

You can change the subtitle language.

1. Select "Subtitle Language".

2. Select a language you want to read on the "Subtitle Language" screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, select **"Other"** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following "ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE".

To return to the "Setup Menu" screen, select .

- **DVD language**

You can change the language on the DVD video menu.

1. Select "DVD Language".

2. Select the language you want to read on the "DVD Language" screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, select **"Other"** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following "ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE".

To return to the "Setup Menu" screen, select .

- **Angle mark**

The multi−angle mark can be turned on or off on the screen while the disc which is multi−angle compatible is being played.

1. Select “Angle Mark”.

2. Select “On” or “Off”.

- **Parental lock**

The level of viewer restrictions can be changed.

1. Select “Parental Lock”.

2. Enter the 4−digit personal code on the “Key code” screen.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select ↩.

3. Select a parental level (1 — 8) on the “Select Restriction Level”. Select ↩ to return to the “Setup Menu” screen.

- **Auto start**

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing. Certain discs may not play.

1. Select “Auto Start”.

2. Select “On” or “Off”.

- **Sound dynamic range (if equipped)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

1. Select “Sound Dynamic Range”.

2. Select “MAX”, “STD” or “MIN”.

ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE

If you select “Other” on the “Audio Language” screen, “Subtitle Language” screen or “DVD Language” screen, you can select the language you want to hear or read by entering a language code.

1. Enter the 4−digit language code.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

2. Select “OK”.

Code	Language
0514	English
1001	Japanese
0618	French
0405	German
0920	Italian
0519	Spanish
2608	Chinese
1412	Dutch
1620	Portuguese
1922	Swedish
1821	Russian
1115	Korean
0512	Greek
0101	Afar
0102	Abkhazian

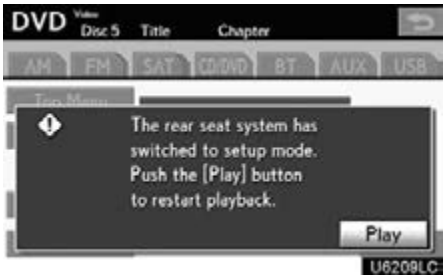
0106	Afrikaans
0113	Amharic
0118	Arabic
0119	Assamese
0125	Aymara
0126	Azerbaijani
0201	Bashkir
0205	Byelorussian
0207	Bulgarian
0208	Bihari
0209	Bislama
0214	Bengali
0215	Tibetan
0218	Breton
0301	Catalan
0315	Corsican
0319	Czech
0325	Welsh
0401	Danish
0426	Bhutani
0515	Esperanto
0520	Estonian
0521	Basque
0601	Persian
0609	Finnish
0610	Fiji
0615	Faroese
0625	Frisian
0701	Irish
0704	Scots–Gaelic
0712	Galician
0714	Guarani

0721	Gujarati
0801	Hausa
0809	Hindi
0818	Croatian
0821	Hungarian
0825	Armenian
0901	Interlingua
0905	Interlingue
0911	Inupiak
0914	Indonesian
0919	Icelandic
0923	Hebrew
1009	Yiddish
1023	Javanese
1101	Georgian
1111	Kazakh
1112	Greenlandic
1113	Cambodian
1114	Kannada
1119	Kashmiri
1121	Kurdish
1125	Kirghiz
1201	Latin
1214	Lingala
1215	Laothian
1220	Lithuanian
1222	Latvian
1307	Malagasy
1309	Maori
1311	Macedonian
1312	Malayalam
1314	Mongolian

1315	Moldavian
1318	Marathi
1319	Malay
1320	Maltese
1325	Burmese
1401	Nauru
1405	Nepali
1415	Norwegian
1503	Occitan
1513	(Afan)Oromo
1518	Oriya
1601	Panjabi
1612	Polish
1619	Pashto, Pushto
1721	Quechua
1813	Rhaeto−Romance
1814	Kirundi
1815	Romanian
1823	Kinyarwanda
1901	Sanskrit
1904	Sindhi
1907	Sangho
1908	Serbo−Croatian
1909	Sinhalese
1911	Slovak
1912	Slovenian
1913	Samoan
1914	Shona
1915	Somali
1917	Albanian
1918	Serbian
1919	Siswati

1920	Sesotho
1921	Sundanese
1923	Swahili
2001	Tamil
2005	Telugu
2007	Tajik
2008	Thai
2009	Tigrinya
2011	Turkmen
2012	Tagalog
2014	Setswana
2015	Tonga
2018	Turkish
2019	Tsonga
2020	Tatar
2023	Twi
2111	Ukrainian
2118	Urdu
2126	Uzbek
2209	Vietnamese
2215	Volapük
2315	Wolof
2408	Xhosa
2515	Yoruba
2621	Zulu

SETUP OPERATION FROM THE REAR SEAT



This screen appears when a rear passenger selects the setup menu.

If you want to cancel the setup operation from the rear seat, select **"Play"**. The player will resume normal play.

Under the same condition, the rear passenger can cancel the setup operation from the front seat.

To lock the operation of the player from the rear seat, see "● Rear system lock" on page 344.

(f) Operating a video CD

PLAYING A VIDEO CD

Select "CD/DVD" tab to display this screen.

When you select **"Wide"** on "Settings" screen, the screen mode can be changed.

If you select **"Full Screen"** when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns.

DISPLAYING VIDEO CD SETTINGS

If you select **"Settings"** on "Video CD" screen, "Settings" screen appears.

DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD SETTINGS

- **Controls on top page**

"Select Number": The track or number search screen appears. (See "SEARCHING BY TRACK" on page 249.)

"Prev. Page": When you select this while the disc menu is displayed, the previous page appears on the screen. If you select this while the player is playing video, the previous track is searched and played.

"Next Page": When you select this while the disc menu is displayed, the next page appears on the display. If you select this while the player is playing video, the next track is searched and played.

"Main/Sub": A multiplex transmission changing control. The mode changes from Main/Sub to Main, to Sub and back to Main/Sub by selecting this control.

"Return": Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

"Wide": The screen mode screen appears.

DISPLAYING VIDEO CD CONTROLS

If you select the part where controls are not located while you are watching video on the video CD, video CD controls will appear.

If "⃠" appears on the display when you select a control, the operation is not permitted.

DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD CONTROLS

: Use this to pause the video screen.

: Select this to fast reverse during playback.

: Select this to resume playing during pause.

: Select this to fast forward during the playback and start playing frame by frame during pause.

SEARCHING BY TRACK

Enter the track numbers and select "OK". The player starts playing video for that title number.

You can select a track number by pushing **"∧"** or **"∨"** on the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

Select ↩, and the previous screen returns.

(g) If the changer malfunctions

If the changer or another unit equipped with the changer malfunction, your audio/video system will display following messages.

If "Check disc ×" appears on the display: It indicates that the disc dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly. If a disc which is not playable is inserted, "Check disc ×" will also appear on the screen. For appropriate discs for this changer, see "Audio/video system operating hints" on page 294.

If "Region code error" appears on the display: It indicates that the DVD region code is not set properly.

If "DVD error" appears on the display: It indicates that the inside of the player unit may be too hot due to the very high ambient temperature. Remove the disc from the player and allow the player to cool down.

If the malfunction is not rectified: Take your vehicle to your dealer.

If an MP3/WMA disc contains CD−DA files, only CD−DA files are played. If an MP3/WMA disc contains files other than CD−DA, only MP3/WMA files are played.

(h) DVD player and DVD video disc information

DVD VIDEO DISCS

This DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats. The DVD video disc conforming to another formats such as PAL or SECAM cannot be used.

Region codes: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating a country where you can use the DVD video disc on this DVD player. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as “ALL” or “1”, you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, “Region code error” appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, there is a case that you cannot use it.

Marks shown on DVD video discs:

NTSC	Indicates NTSC format of color TV.
2	Indicates the number of audio tracks.
2	Indicates the number of language subtitles.
3	Indicates the number of angles.
16:9 LB 4:3	Indicates the screen to be selected. Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
ALL 1	Indicates a region code by which this video disc can be played. ALL: in all countries Number: region code

DVD VIDEO DISC GLOSSARY

DVD video discs: Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby Digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi−angle and multi−language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

Viewer restrictions: This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with a level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2 − 7: DVD video discs for children and G−rated movie can be played.

Level 8: All types of the DVD video discs can be played.

Multi−angle feature: You can enjoy the same scene at different angles.

Multi−language feature: You can select a language of the subtitle and audio.

Region codes: The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. For region codes, see page 250.

Audio: This DVD player can play liner PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded type cannot be played.

Title and chapter: Video and audio programs stored in DVD video disc are divided in parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one piece of movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: The unit smaller than that of title. A title comprises plural chapters.

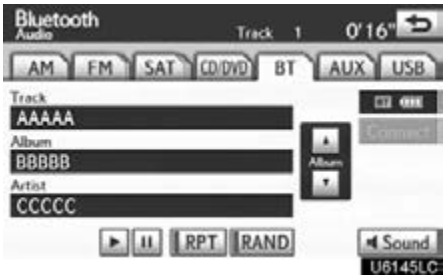
Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", and the double−D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

— Bluetooth® audio operation

The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.



This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

INFORMATION

Portable players must correspond to the following specifications in order to be connected to the Bluetooth® audio system. However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

- ***Bluetooth® Specification Ver.1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver.2.0+EDR or higher)***
- ***Profile***
  - ***A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver.1.0***
  - ***AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver.1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver.1.3 or higher)***

Please go to "http://www.lexus.com/" to find approved Bluetooth® phones for this system.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a trademark owned by Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

CAUTION

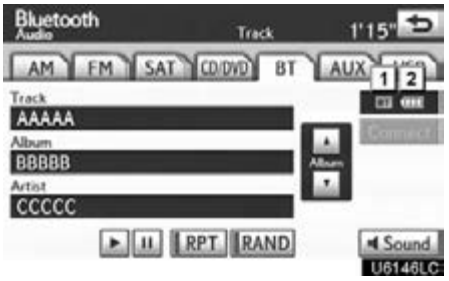
Do not operate the player's controls or connect to the Bluetooth® audio system while driving.

NOTICE

Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.

INFORMATION

- ***In the following conditions, the system may not function.***
  - ***The portable player is turned off.***
  - ***The portable player is not connected.***
  - ***The portable player has a low battery.***
- ***It may take time, the phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.***



1 **Indicates the condition of the Bluetooth® connection.**

"Blue" indicates an excellent connection to Bluetooth®.

"Yellow" indicates a bad connection to Bluetooth®, resulting in possible deterioration of audio quality.

: No connection to Bluetooth®.

2 **Indicates the amount of battery charge left.**

Remaining charge is not displayed while the Bluetooth® is connecting.

The amount left does not always correspond with the one of your portable player.

This system doesn't have a charging function.

An antenna for the Bluetooth® connection is built in to the instrument panel. The indication of the Bluetooth® connection may turn yellow and the system may not function when you use the Bluetooth® portable player in the following conditions.

- Your portable player is obstructed by certain objects (such as when it is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box).
- Your portable player touches or is covered with metal materials.

Leave the Bluetooth® portable player in a place where the “Blue” indication is displayed.

The portable player information is registered when the Bluetooth® audio system is connected. When you release possession of your vehicle, remove your portable player. (See “(a) Removing a Bluetooth® audio” on page 405.)

FCC ID : AJDK021
IC : 775E−K021

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS−Gen and RSS−210 of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions : (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person’s body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Co−location: This transmitter must not be co−located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

(a) Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

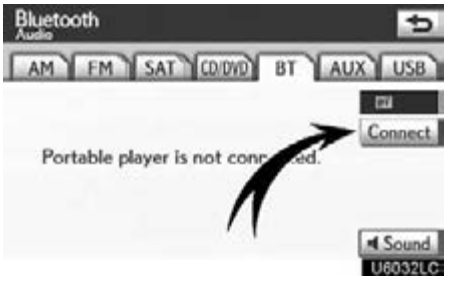
To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to register your portable player with the system. Once you have registered it, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (See "—Setting Bluetooth® audio" on page 404.)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, see the instruction manual that comes with it.

- **When the connection method is "From Vehicle".**
  - **When the auto connection is on**

    When the portable player is standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in either ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.
  - **When the auto connection is off**

    Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.



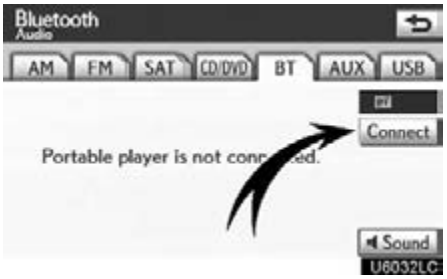
Select "Connect".

When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed. Now you can use the portable player.

This screen will appear when the connection has failed.

- **When the connection method is "From Portable Player"**

Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system. For the operation procedure for the portable player, see the instruction manual that comes with it.



Select "Connect".

Connect the portable audio player to the Bluetooth® audio system.

This screen will appear when the connection has been successfully established.

- **Reconnecting the portable player**

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception from the Bluetooth® network when the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

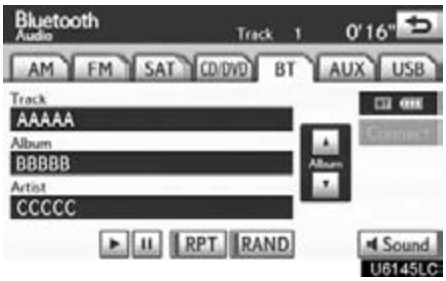
If the Bluetooth® is disconnected on purpose such as you turned your portable player off, this does not happen.

Reconnect it by the following method.

- **Select the portable player again.**
- **Enter the portable player.**

(b) Playing a Bluetooth® audio

- **Playing and pausing a Bluetooth® audio**



Select "BT" tab if the Bluetooth® audio player is already connected.

Select ▶ and the music will start playing.

Select ❚❚ and the music will pause.

Select ▶ and the music will start playing again.

Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, the music may start playing when selecting ❚❚ while it is paused. On the other hand, the music may pause when selecting ▶ while it is playing.

Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.

- **Selecting a desired track**

"SEEK·TRACK" button: Use for direct access to a desired track.

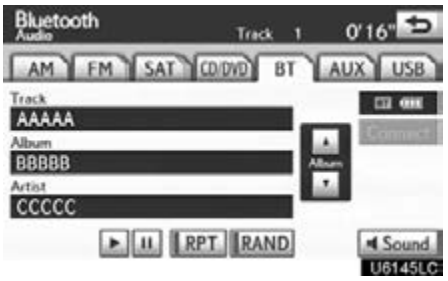
Push either side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and repeat it until the desired track number appears on the screen. As you release the button, the portable player will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

Fast forward:
Push and hold the "∧" button of **"SEEK·TRACK"** to fast forward the player. When you release the button, the portable player will resume playing from that position.

Reverse:
Push and hold the "∨" button of **"SEEK·TRACK"** to reverse the player. When you release the button, the player will resume playing.

INFORMATION
Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

- **Selecting a desired album**

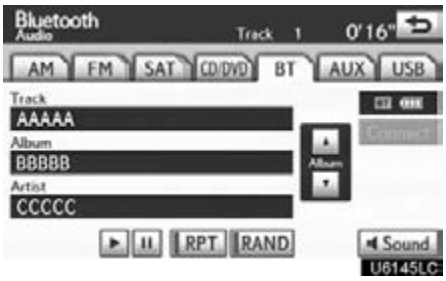


"Album ▲": Select this button to go to the next album.

"Album ▼": Select this button to go to the previous album.

INFORMATION
Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

- **Other function**



"RPT": Use this control to automatic replay the track you are currently listening to.

Repeating a track—

While the track is playing, select "RPT" briefly.

"RPT" appears on the screen. When the track is finished, the player will automatically play it again. To cancel the repeat, select **"RPT"** once again.

"RAND": Use this for automatic and random selection of tracks on the album that you are currently listening to.

Playing the tracks in the album in random order—

While the track is playing, select "RAND" briefly.

"RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a track in the album you are currently listening to. To cancel this function, select **"RAND"** once again.

INFORMATION
Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

—USB memory/iPod operation

Connecting a USB memory or iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

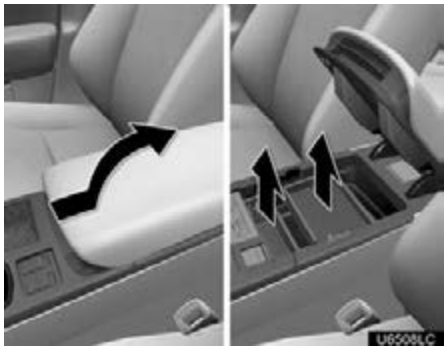
⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the player's controls or connect the USB memory or iPod while driving.

NOTICE

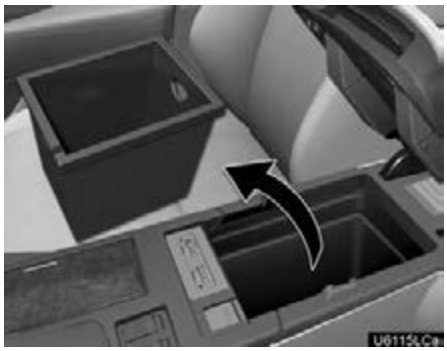
- ***Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.***
- ***Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.***
- ***Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.***

(a) Connecting a USB memory or iPod

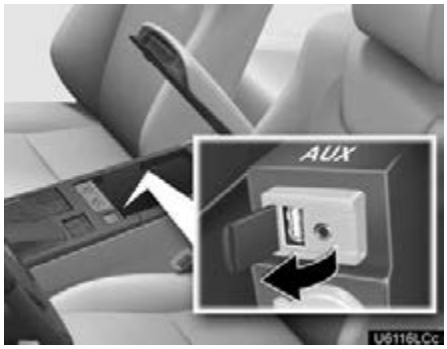


1. Slide the armrest while pulling up the lever, and lift the armrest.

2. Remove the upper trays (if equipped).



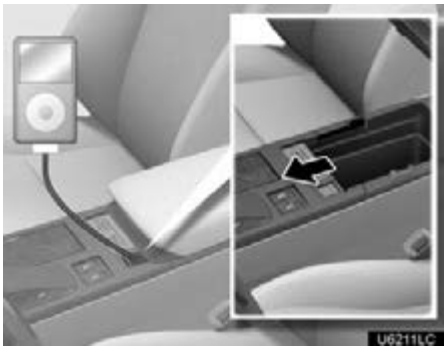
3. Remove the lower tray.



4. Open the cover and connect a USB memory or iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the USB memory or iPod if it is not turned on.

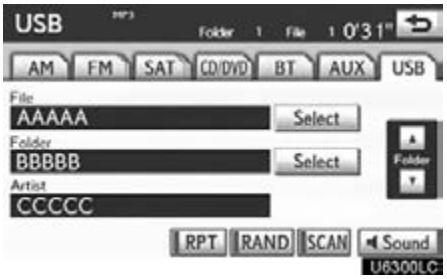
- **Routing portable audio device cables**



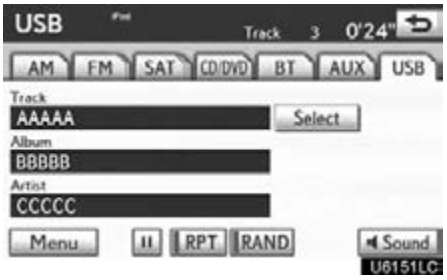
When the cover is slide open, portable audio device cables can be pulled through the opening.

(b) Playing a USB memory or iPod

- **Playing and pausing a file or track**



▶ **USB memory**



▶ **iPod**

Select "USB" tab to display this screen if the USB memory or iPod is already connected.

Select ▶ and the music will start playing.

Select ❚❚ and the music will pause.

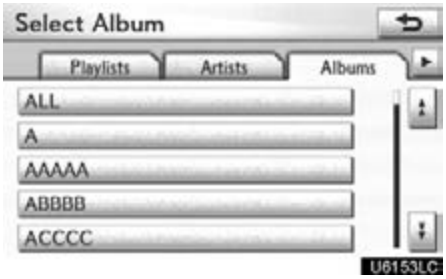
Select ▶ and the music will start playing again.

INFORMATION

- ***When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.***
- ***When the USB memory is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.***
- ***Depending on the iPod or USB memory that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.***

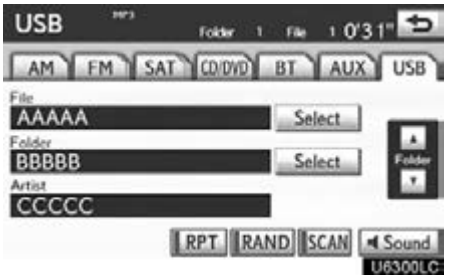
- **Selecting a play mode (iPod only)**

1. **Select "Menu".**



2. **Select the desired play mode.**

- **Selecting a desired folder (USB memory only)**



"Folder▲": Select this button to go to the next folder.

"Folder▼": Select this button to go to the previous folder.

"Select" for Folder: The desired folder can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Select **"Select"**. The folder list is displayed.

Select the desired folder number. The system will start playing the first file of the selected folder.

: By selecting this button, the list moves up by 5 folder groups. If this button is selected when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By selecting this button, the list moves down by 5 folder groups. If this button is selected when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

- **Selecting a desired file or track**

"SEEK·TRACK" button: Use for direct access to a desired file or track.

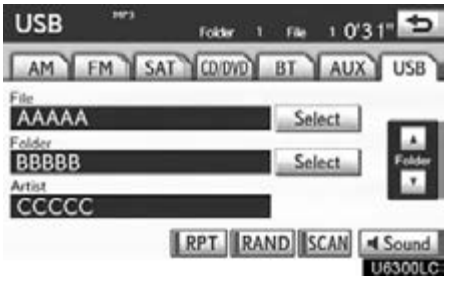
Push either side of the **"SEEK·TRACK"** button and repeat it until the desired file or track appears on the screen. As you release the button, the USB memory or iPod will start playing the selected file or track from the beginning.

Fast forward:
Push and hold the **"∧"** button of **"SEEK·TRACK"** to fast forward the player. When you release the button, the player will resume playing from that position.

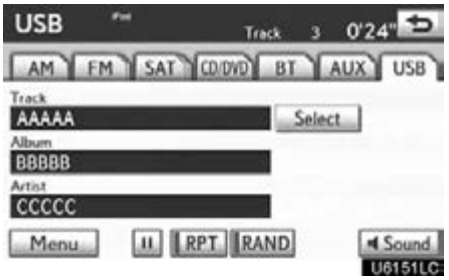
Reverse:
Push and hold the **"∨"** button of **"SEEK·TRACK"** to reverse the player. When you release the button, the player will resume playing.

"TUNE·FILE" knob: Use for direct access to a desired file or track in the player.

Turn the **"TUNE·FILE"** knob to step up or down all the files or tracks in the player you are currently listening to.



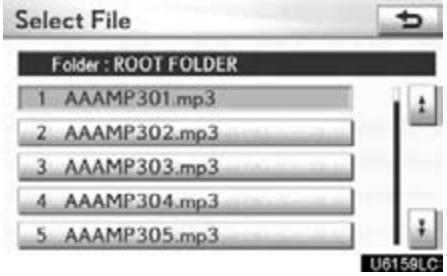
▶ **USB memory**



▶ **iPod**

"Select" for File or Track: The desired file or track can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Select **"Select"**. The file or track list is displayed.



Select the desired file or track number. The system will start playing the selected file or track from the beginning.

: By selecting this button, the list moves up by 5 file or track groups. If this button is selected when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By selecting this button, the list moves down by 5 file or track groups. If this button is selected when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

- **Searching for a desired file (USB memory only)**

Select "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button briefly while the music is playing.

"SCAN" appears on the screen. The player will play the next file for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a file, select **"SCAN"** on the screen or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time. If the player reaches the end of the memory, it will continue scanning at file1.

After all the files are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

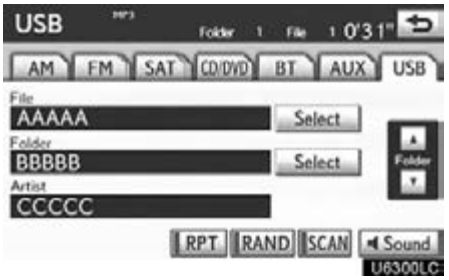
- **Searching for a desired folder (USB memory only)**

Select "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button for longer than a second while the music is playing.

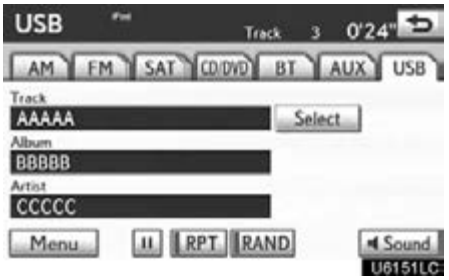
"FLD.SCAN" appears on the screen. The program at the beginning of each folder will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, select **"SCAN"** on the screen or push the **"SCAN"** button a second time.

After all the folders are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

- **Other function**



▶ **USB memory**



▶ **iPod**

"RPT": Use this control to automatic replay the file or track you are currently listening to.

Repeating a file or track—

While the file or track is playing, select "RPT" briefly.

"RPT" appears on the screen. When the file or track is finished, the player will automatically play it again. To cancel the repeat, select **"RPT"** once again.

Repeating a folder (USB memory only) —

While the folder is playing, select "RPT" for longer than a second.

"FLD.RPT" appears on the screen. When the folder is finished, the system will automatically go back to the beginning of the folder and play the folder again. To cancel it, select **"RPT"** once again.

"RAND": Use this for automatic and random selection of files or tracks on the folder that you are currently listening to.

Playing the file or track in random order—

While the file or track is playing, select "RAND" briefly.

"RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file or track you are currently listening to. To cancel this function, select **"RAND"** once again.

Playing the files in all files in random order —

Select **"RAND"** for longer than a second while the music is playing. "FLD.RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file in all files. To cancel it, select **"RAND"** once again.

When a file is skipped or the system is inoperative, select **"RAND"** to reset.

Audio/video remote controls (steering switches)

Some functions of the audio system can be adjusted using the switches on the steering wheel.

Details of the specific switches, controls, and features are described below.

1 Volume control switch

2 **"MODE"** switch

3 **"∧∨"** switch

1 Volume control switch

Push **"+"** side to increase the volume. The volume continues to increase while the switch is being pressed.

Push **"−"** side to decrease the volume. The volume continues to decrease while the switch is being pressed.

2 "MODE" switch

Push **"MODE"** switch to select an audio mode. Each push changes the mode sequentially if the desired mode is ready to use.

To turn the audio/video system on, push the **"MODE"** switch.

To turn the audio/video system off, push and hold the **"MODE"** switch until you hear a beep.

3 "∧∨" switch

Radio

This switch has the following features—

To select a preset station:
Quickly push and release the **"∧"** or **"∨"** side of the switch. Do this again to select the next preset station.

To seek a station:
Push and hold the **"∧"** or **"∨"** side of the switch until you hear a beep. Do this again to find the next station. If you push the switch on either side during the seek mode, seeking will be cancelled.

To step up or down the frequency, push and hold the switch even after you hear a beep. When you release from the switch, the radio will begin seeking up or down for a station. Do this again to find the next station.

XM® Satellite Radio—

To select a preset channel, push the **"∧"** or **"∨"** side of the switch. Repeat until a desired channel is found.

CD changer or DVD changer

Use this switch to skip up or down to a different track, file or chapter in either direction.

To select a desired track, file or chapter:
Quickly push and release the **"∧"** or **"∨"** side of the switch until the track, file or chapter you want to play is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, file or chapter, push the **"∨"** side of the switch once, quickly.

To select a desired disc:
Push and hold the **"∧"** or **"∨"** switch until you hear a beep to change to the next or the previous disc. Repeat this operation until you reach the disc you want to listen to.

Bluetooth® audio player

Use this switch to skip up or down to a different track or album in either direction.

To select a desired track:
Quickly push and release the "∧" or "∨" side of the switch until the track you want to listen to is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, push the "∨" side of the switch once quickly.

To select a desired album:
Push and hold "∧" or "∨" switch until you hear a beep to change to the next or the previous album. Repeat this operation until you reach the album you want to listen to.

USB memory/iPod

Use this switch to skip up or down to a different file or track in either direction.

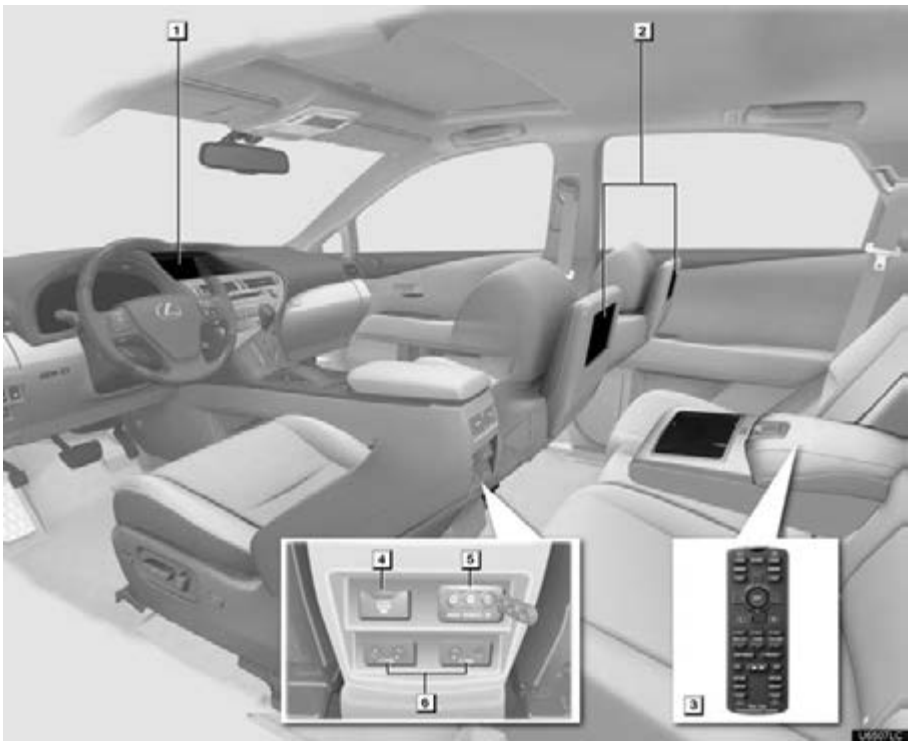
To select a desired file or track:
Push the **"∧"** or **"∨"** side of the switch until the file or track you want to listen to is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current file or track, push the **"∨"** side of the switch once quickly.

To select a desired folder (USB memory only):

Push and hold "∧" or "∨" switch until you hear a beep to change to the next or the previous folder. Repeat this operation until you reach the folder you want to listen to.

Rear seat entertainment system features —

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video.



1 Front audio system
2 Displays
3 Rear seat entertainment system controller
4 Power outlet
5 A/V input port
6 Headphone volume control dials and headphone jacks

The rear seat entertainment system can be used when the “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

- **Displays**

A display is installed in the back of each front seat. When audio–video equipment is connected to the A/V input port, rear passengers can enjoy different audio sources on each display. See “—Using the video mode” on page 291.

- **Rear seat entertainment system controller**

Use the controller to operate both the left and right side displays. Some controller buttons are shared between the left and right side displays. When operating those buttons, first select the desired display using the select display switch.

To operate, aim the controller at the desired display.

1 Controller buttons for the left side display

2 Controller buttons for the right side display

3 Turns display off

4 Selects the display to be operated (for some controller buttons only)

- **Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)**

An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being discharged. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

- **Replacing the controller batteries**

Necessary item for replacing “2 AA batteries”.

1. Remove the cover.

2. Remove the depleted batteries and install the new ones.

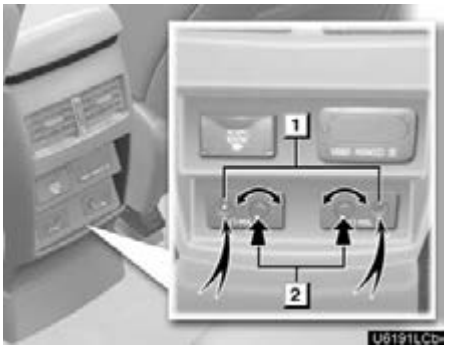
If the batteries are discharged, the following symptoms may occur.

- The rear seat entertainment system controller will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

When using 2 AA batteries

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, electric appliance shop, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

- **Headphone jacks**



1 **To use the headphones, connect them to the jack.**

2 **To adjust the volume**

1. Push the knob.

2. Turn the knob clockwise to increase the volume. Turn the knob counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

3. Push the knob again.

- **Headphones**

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

- **Volume**

Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.

- **Caution screen**

This screen appears for a few seconds when the “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

- **Changing the source**

1 Turning on the audio source selection screen

2 Inputting the selected icon

3 Selecting an icon

Push **“SOURCE”** to display the audio source selection screen.

Select an audio source.

- **Changing the speaker output**

To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn **"Speaker Output"** on.

⚠ CAUTION

- **While driving**

  Do not use headphones.
  Doing so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- **To prevent accidents and electric shock**

  Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.
- **When the remote control is not used**

  Stow the remote control. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- **Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. The louder sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.**
- **Removed battery and other parts:**
  - **Keep away from children.**
  - **These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.**

NOTICE

- ***Cleaning the display***

  Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.

  If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

- ***To prevent damage to the remote control***

  Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, temperature heat and high humidity.

  Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.

  Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.

- ***For normal operation after replacing the battery, observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:***
  - ***Always work with dry hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.***
  - ***Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.***
  - ***Do not bend either of the battery terminals.***

— Using the radio

Select radio mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

1 Selecting a preset station

2 Tuning the station

- **Selecting a preset station**

Push **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"DISC·CH"** until the desired station band appears on the screen.

- **Tuning the station**

Push **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"TUNE"** until the desired station appears on the screen.

Push **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"TUNE"** and the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

— Using the DVD player

1 Turning on DVD player mode

2 Selecting a disc

- **Selecting a disc**

Push **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"DISC·CH"** until the desired disc number appears on the screen.

- Audio CD, CD text 277
- MP3/WMA disc 278
- DVD video/audio 278
- Video CD 288

— Playing an audio CD/CD text

- **Selecting a track**

Push **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"TUNE"** until the desired track number appears on the screen.

- **Fast forwarding or reversing a track**

Push and hold **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"TUNE"**.

— Playing WMA/MP3 discs

- **Selecting a file**

1 Selecting a file

2 Selecting a folder

Push "∧" or "∨" of **"TUNE"** until the desired file number appears on the screen.

- **Selecting a folder**

Push "∧" or "∨" of **"FOLDER"** until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

- **Fast forwarding or reversing a file**

Push "∧" or "∨" of **"TUNE"**.

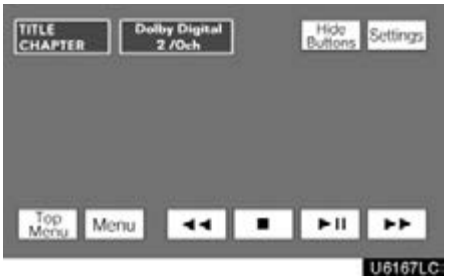
— Playing DVD video/audio

- **Controller**

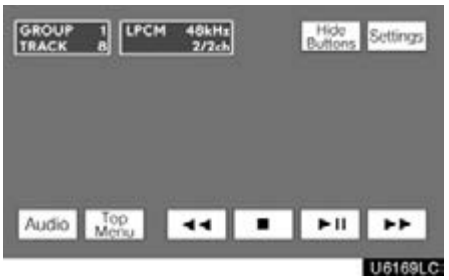
1 Turning on the DVD mode
2 Inputting the selected icon
3 Selecting an icon
4 Turning on the menu disc
5 Playing/pausing a disc
6 Fast forwarding a disc
7 Turning on the control icon screen
8 Reversing a disc
9 Turning on the title selection screen
10 Push to select a chapter/track
Push and hold to fast forwarding or reversing a chapter/track

- **DVD video and DVD audio**

Push **"OPTION"** if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video or DVD audio, and following screens appear.



▶ **DVD video**



▶ **DVD audio**

"Settings": Selecting this will display setting screen.

"Hide Buttons": Selecting this will turn off the icons from the screen.

If "⃠" appears on the screen when you select a control, the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO CONTROLS

"Menu" and "Top Menu": If you select any of the above controls, the menu screen for DVD video appears. (For the operation, see the manual that comes with the DVD video disc provided separately.)

: Selecting this will fast reverse during playback.

: Selecting this will stop the video screen.

: Selecting this will pause/resume the video screen.

: Selecting this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO CONTROLS

"Top Menu": If you select this button, the menu screen for DVD audio appears. (For the operation, see the manual that comes with the DVD audio disc provided separately.)

"Audio": The audio changing screen appears. (See page 285.)

: Selecting this will fast reverse during playback.

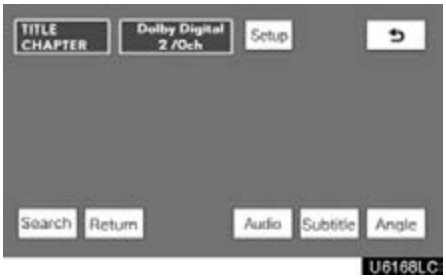
: Selecting this will stop the disc.

: Selecting this will pause/resume the disc.

: Selecting this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

DVD SETTINGS

When **"Settings"** is selected on the control icon screens, the following screens will appear according to audio mode.



▶ **DVD video**

▶ **DVD audio**

DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO SETTINGS

"Setup": The initial set up screen appears. (See page 286.)

"Search": The title search screen appears. (See page 282.)

"Return": Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

"Audio": The audio changing screen appears. (See page 285.)

"Subtitle": The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 284.)

"Angle": The angle selection screen appears. (See page 286.)

DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO SETTINGS

"Setup": The initial set up screen appears. (See page 286.)

"Select Number": The track or number search screen appears. (See page 284.)

"Search": The group search screen appears.

"Return": Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

"Prev. Page": Select this button to reverse the pages.

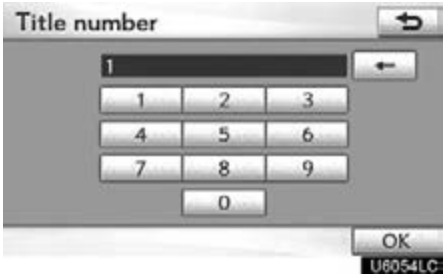
"Next Page": Select this button to forward the pages.

"Subtitle": The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 284.)

"Angle": The angle selection screen appears. (See page 286.)

When you select , the previous screen returns.

SEARCHING BY TITLE



DVD video only—

Select "Search" on the settings screen.

Enter the title number and select "OK". The player starts playing video for that title number.

When you push **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"TUNE"**, you can select a chapter.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select to delete the numbers.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

SEARCHING BY GROUP

DVD audio only —

Select “Search” on the settings screen.

Enter the group number and select “OK”. The player starts playing the disc for that group number.

When you push **“∧”** or **“∨”** of **“TUNE”**, you can select a track.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

When you select ⮌, the previous screen returns.

SELECTING THE BONUS GROUP

DVD audio only —

Select “Search” on the settings screen.

Enter the bonus group number on the searching group screen and select “OK”.

The “Enter Key Code” screen will appear. To enter the number of the group you want to play, select the group number.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

When you select ⮌, the previous screen returns.

Select “OK” on the screen.

The player starts playing the disc from the selected bonus group number.

SELECTING THE MENU NUMBER

DVD audio only —

Select “Select Number” on the settings screen.

Enter the menu number and select “OK”.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

When you select ⮌, the previous screen returns.

CHANGING THE SUBTITLE LANGUAGE

Select “Subtitle” on the settings screen.

Each time you select “Subtitle”, the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select **“Hide”**, the subtitle can be hidden.

When you select ⮌, the previous screen returns.

CHANGING THE AUDIO LANGUAGE

DVD video only —

Select “Audio” on the settings screen.

Each time you select “Audio”, the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

CHANGING THE AUDIO FORMAT

DVD audio only —

Select “Audio” on the control icon screen.

Each time you select “Audio”, another audio format stored on the disc is selected.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

CHANGING THE ANGLE

Select “Angle” on the settings screen.

The angle can be selected for discs that are multi−angle compatible when the angle mark appears on the screen.

Each time you select “Angle”, the angle is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select , and the previous screen returns.

SETUP MENU

Select “Setup” on the settings screen.

There are initial setting buttons on the “Setup Menu” screen.

After you change the initial setting, select **“OK”**. The initial setting screen will be turned off and return to the picture previously.

When **“Default”** is selected, all menus are initialized.

The initial setting can be changed.

- **Audio language**

You can change the audio language.

1. Select “Audio Language”.

2. Select the language you want to hear on the “Audio Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to hear on this screen, select **“Other”** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

- **Subtitle language**

You can change the subtitle language.

1. Select “Subtitle Language”.

2. Select a language you want to read on the “Subtitle Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, select **“Other”** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

- **DVD language**

You can change the language on the DVD video menu.

1. Select “DVD Language”.

2. Select the language you want to read on the “DVD Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, select **“Other”** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

- **Angle mark**

The multi−angle mark can be turned on or off on the screen while the disc which is multi−angle compatible is being played.

1. Select “Angle Mark”.

2. Select “ON” or “OFF”.

- **Parental lock**

The level of viewer restrictions can be changed.

1. Select “Parental Lock”.

2. Enter the 4−digit personal code on the “Key code” screen.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select to delete the numbers.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

3. Select a parental level (1 — 8) on the “Select Restriction Level”. Select to return to the “Setup Menu” screen.

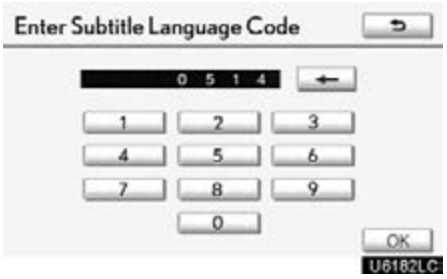
- **Sound dynamic range (if equipped)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

1. Select “Sound Dynamic Range”.

2. Select “MAX”, “STD” or “MIN”.

ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE



If you select "Other" on the "Audio Language" screen, "Subtitle Language" screen or "DVD Language" screen, you can select the language you want to hear or read by entering a language code. (See page 243.)

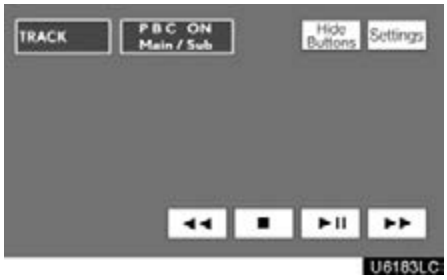
1. Enter the 4−digit language code.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

2. Select "OK".

- **Video CD**

Push **"OPTION"** if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and following screen appears.



"Settings": Selecting this will display setting screen.

"Hide Buttons": Selecting this will turn off the icons from the screen.

If "⊘" appears on the display when you select a control, the operation is not permitted.

DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD CONTROLS

◄◄ **:** Select this to fast reverse during playback.

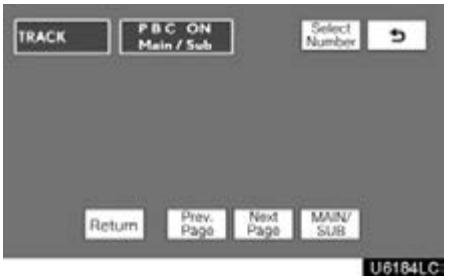
■ **:** Selecting this will stop the video screen.

►II **:** Use this to pause/resume the video screen.

►► **:** Select this to fast forward during the playback and start playing frame by frame during pause.

VIDEO CD SETTINGS

When **"Settings"** is selected on the control icon screen, the following screen will appear.



DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD SETTINGS

"Select Number": The track or number search screen appears. (See "SEARCHING BY TRACK" on page 290.)

"Return": Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

"Prev. Page": When you select this while the disc menu is displayed, the previous page appears on the screen. If you select this while the player is playing video, the previous track is searched and played.

"Next Page": When you select this while the disc menu is displayed, the next page appears on the display. If you select this while the player is playing video, the next track is searched and played.

"MAIN/SUB": A multiplex transmission changing control. The mode changes from Main/Sub to Main, to Sub and back to Main/Sub by selecting this control.

SEARCHING BY TRACK

Select "Select Number" on the settings screen.

Enter the track numbers and select "OK". The player starts playing video for that title number.

You can select a track number by pushing **"∧"** or **"∨"** of **"TUNE"**.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

Select ↩, and the previous screen returns.

— Using the video mode

Push **"VIDEO"** to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio–video equipment to the A/V input port.

When **"Speaker Output"** is off, any audio–video source can be selected for the other rear display. See "● Changing the speaker output" on page 275.

- **Using the A/V input port**

Open the cover.

The A/V input port is composed of 3 input ports.

Yellow: Video input port

White: Left channel audio input port

Red: Right channel audio input port

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio–video equipment is connected to the A/V input port. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

The power outlet is used to connect the audio–video equipment. See the *vehicle owner's manual*.

NOTICE

When the A/V input port is not in use, keep the A/V input port cover closed. Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.

- **Changing to PAL format**

Push **"DISPLAY".**

If the video does not appear, turn "**PAL VIDEO"** on.

"PAL VIDEO" will be displayed when PAL format equipment is connected to the A/V input port.

— Changing other settings

- **Setting the display mode**

Pushing "SIZE" changes the display modes sequentially as follows:

Normal → Wide 1 → Wide 2

- **Adjusting the screen**

Push **"DISPLAY".**

Select the desired button to adjust color, tone, contrast and brightness. After adjusting the screen, select "OK".

"Color" "R":
Strengthens the red color of the screen.

"Color" "G":
Strengthens the green color of the screen.

"Tone" "+": Strengthens the tone of the screen.

"Tone" "−": Weakens the tone of the screen.

"Contrast" "+":
Strengthens the contrast of the screen.

"Contrast" "−":
Weakens the contrast of the screen.

"Brightness" "+":
Brightens the screen.

"Brightness" "−":
Darkens the screen.

The screen goes off when **"Screen Off"** is selected. To turn the display screen back on, push **"DVD"**, **"VIDEO"**, **"OFF"** or **"DISPLAY"** for the display. The selected screen appears.

Audio/video system operating hints

NOTICE

To ensure correct audio/video system operations:

- ***Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio/video system.***
- ***Do not put anything other than an appropriate discs into the CD changer or DVD changer.***
- ***The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio/video system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.***

- **Radio reception**

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio — it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

FM

Fading and drifting stations — Generally, the effective range of FM is about 25 miles (40 km). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi–path — FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering — These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping — If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

AM

Fading — AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere — especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference — When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static — AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening, or electrical motors. This results in static.

XM®

Cargo loaded on the roof luggage carrier, especially metal objects, may adversely affect the reception of XM® Satellite Radio.

Alternation or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.

iPod

About iPod —

- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Compatible models —

Model	Generation	Software version
iPod	5th generation	Ver. 1.2.0 or higher
iPod nano	1st generation	Ver. 1.3.0 or higher
	2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or higher
	3rd generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher
iPod touch	1st generation	Ver. 1.1.0 or higher
iPod classic	1st generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models listed above might be incompatible with this system.
iPod 4th generation and earlier models are not compatible with this system.
iPhone, iPod mini, iPod shuffle and iPod photo are not compatible with this system.

USB memory

USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback.

- USB communication formats: USB 2.0 FS (12 MBPS)
- File formats: FAT 16/32 (Windows®)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

CARING FOR YOUR CD CHANGER, DVD CHANGER AND DISCS

- Your CD changer and DVD changer is intended for use with 4.7 in. (12 cm) discs only.
- Extremely high temperatures can keep your CD changer and DVD changer from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you use the changer and player.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your CD changer and DVD changer skip.
- If moisture gets into your CD changer and DVD changer, you may not play even though they appear to be working. Remove the discs from the changer and wait until it dries.

⚠ CAUTION

CD changer and DVD changer use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the changers correctly.

CD changer

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your changer.

  SACD
  Copy−protected CD
  CD−ROM

DVD changer

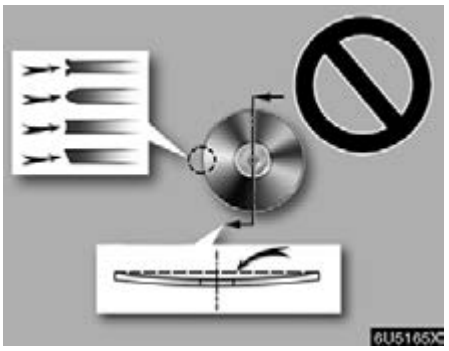
Audio CDs	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO; COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO TEXT; COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO Recordable; COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO ReWritable
DVD video discs	DVD VIDEO; DVD VIDEO
DVD audio discs	DVD AUDIO
Video CDs	VIDEO CD; COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your changer.

  SACD
  Copy−protected CD
  CD−ROM
  DVD+R
  DVD+RW
  DVD−ROM
  DVD−RAM

▶ **Special shaped discs**

▶ **Transparent/translucent discs**



▶ **Low quality discs**

▶ Labeled discs

▶ Correct

▶ Wrong

NOTICE

- ***Do not use special shaped, transparent/translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player or changer, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.***
- ***This system is not designed for use of Dual Disc. Do not use Dual Disc because it may cause damage to the changer.***
- ***Do not use a disc with protection ring. The use of such disc may damage the changer, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.***

- Handle discs carefully, especially when you are inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the players when you are not using them. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat, and direct sunlight.

To clean a disc: Wipe it with a soft, lint–free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint–free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti–static device.

MP3/WMA FILES

- MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3) and WMA (Windows Media® Audio) are audio compression standards.
- The MP3/WMA player can play MP3 and WMA files on CD–ROM, CD–R and CD–RW discs.

  The unit can play disc recordings compatible with ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2 and with the Romeo and Joliet file system.
- When naming an MP3 or WMA file, add the appropriate file extension (.mp3 or .wma).
- The MP3/WMA player plays back files with .mp3 or .wma file extensions as MP3 or WMA files. To prevent noise and playback errors, use the appropriate file extensions.
- The MP3/WMA player can play only the first session using multi–session compatible CDs.
- MP3 player—MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2, and Ver. 2.3 formats. The unit cannot display disc title, track title and artist name in other formats.
- USB memory—MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2, Ver. 2.3 and Ver. 2.4 formats. The unit cannot display track title and artist name in other formats.
- WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title, artist name.
- The emphasis function is available only when playing MP3/WMA files recorded at 32, 44.1 and 48 kHz.

Sampling frequency

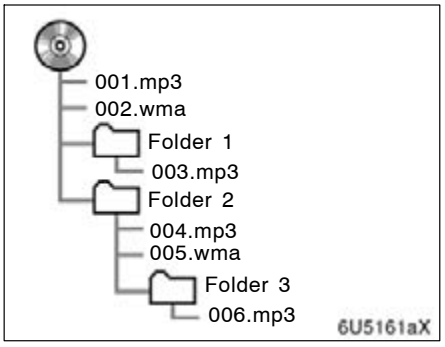
MP3 files for MP3 player:
MPEG 1 LAYER 3—32, 44.1, 48 kHz
MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3—16, 22.05, 24 kHz
MP3 files for USB memory:
MPEG 1 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3—32, 44.1, 48 kHz
MPEG 2 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3—16, 22.05, 24 kHz
MPEG 2.5—8, 11.025, 12 kHz
WMA files for WMA player:
Ver. 7, 8, 9 CBR—32, 44.1, 48 kHz
WMA files for USB memory:
Ver. 9—HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 kHz

- The sound quality of MP3/WMA files generally improves with higher bit rates. In order to achieve a reasonable level of sound quality, discs recorded with a bit rate of at least 128 kbps are recommended.

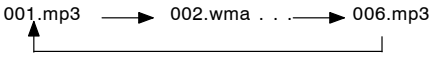
Playable bit rates

MP3 files for MP3 player:
MPEG1 LAYER3—64 to 320 kbps
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3—64 to 160 kbps
MP3 files for USB memory:
MPEG 1 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3—32 to 320 kbps
MPEG 2 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3—32 to 160 kbps
MPEG 2.5—32 to 160 kbps
WMA files for WMA player:
Ver. 7, 8 CBR—48 to 192 kbps
Ver. 9 CBR—48 to 320 kbps
WMA files for USB memory:
Ver. 9—HIGH PROFILE 32 to 320 kbps, VBR (Variable Bit Rate)

- The MP3/WMA player does not play back MP3/WMA files from discs recorder using packet write data transfer (UDF format). Discs should be recorded using “pre–mastering” software rather than packet–write software.
- M3u playlists are not compatible with the audio player.
- MP3i (MP3 interactive) and MP3PRO formats are not compatible with the audio player.
- The player is compatible with VBR (Variable Bit Rate).
- When playing back files recorded as VBR (Variable Bit Rate) files, the play time will not be correctly displayed if fast–forward or reverse operations are used.
- It is not possible to check folders that do not include MP3/WMA files.
- MP3/WMA files in folders up to 8 levels deep can be played. However, the start of playback may be delayed when using discs containing numerous levels of folders. For this reason, we recommend creating discs with no more than two levels of folders.



- The play order of the compact disc with the structure shown above is as follows:



- MP3/WMA player—It is possible to play up to 192 folders or 255 files on one disc.
- USB memory—It is possible to play up to 999 folders, 255 files per folder or 65,025 files in device.
- The order changes depending on the PC and MP3/WMA encoding software you use.

CD−R and CD−RW discs

- CD−R/CD−RW discs that have not been subject to the “finalizing process” (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD−R/CD−RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.
- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD−R/CD−RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play some damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD−RW disc into the MP3/WMA player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD−R disc.
- Recordings on CD−R/CD−RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

TERMS

Packet write—

This is a general term that describes the process of writing data on–demand to CD–R, etc., in the same way that data is written to floppy or hard discs.

ID3 Tag—

This is a method of embedding track–related information in an MP3 file. This embedded information can include the track title, the artist's name, the album title, the music genre, the year of production, comments and other data. The contents can be freely edited using software with ID3 tag editing functions. Although the tags are restricted to the number of characters, the information can be viewed when the track is played back.

WMA Tag—

WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title, artist name.

ISO 9660 format—

This is the international standard for the formatting of CD–ROM folders and files. For the ISO 9660 format, there are two levels of regulations.

Level 1:

The file name is in 8.3 format (8 character file names, with a 3 character file extension. File names must be composed of one–byte capital letters and numbers. The "_" symbol may also be included.)

Level 2:

The file name can have up to 31 characters (including the separation mark "." and file extension). Each folder must contain fewer than 8 hierarchies.

m3u—

Playlists created using "WINAMP" software have a playlist file extension (.m3u).

MP3—

MP3 is an audio compression standard determined by a working group (MPEG) of the ISO (International Standard Organization). MP3 compresses audio data to about 1/10 the size of that on conventional discs.

WMA—

WMA (Windows Media® Audio) is an audio compression format developed by Microsoft®. It compresses files into a size smaller than that of MP3 files. The decoding formats for WMA files are Ver. 7, 8, and 9.

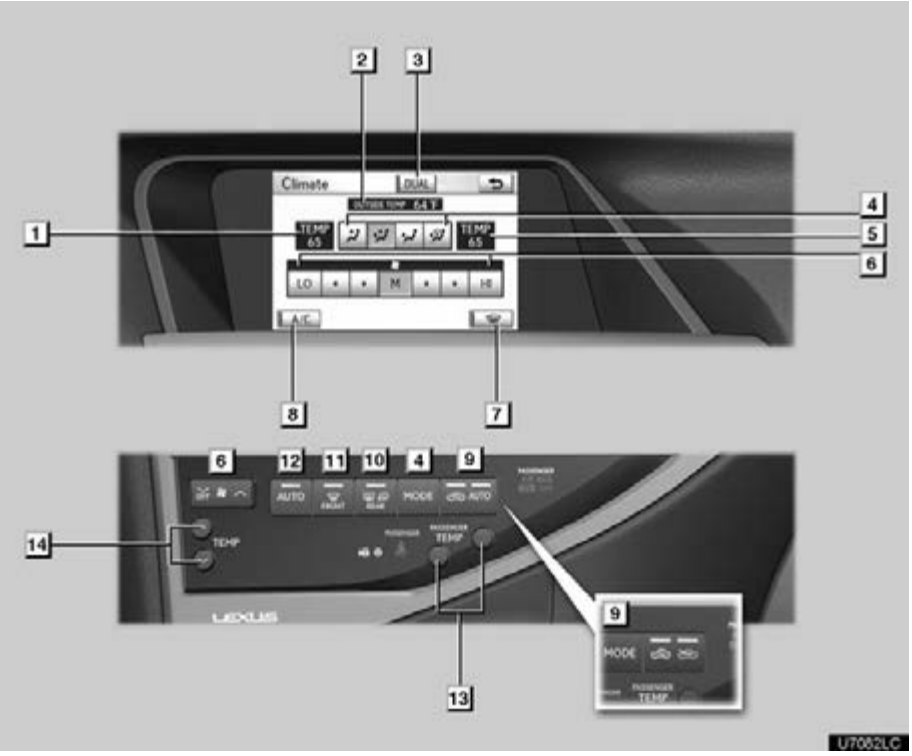
SECTION 8

AIR CONDITIONING

● Automatic air conditioning controls 304

Automatic air conditioning controls

Operations such as changing the air outlets or fan speed are carried out on the screen. To display the air conditioning control screen, push the **"MENU"** button and select **"Climate"**.



1 **Driver side temperature display** (In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)

2 **Outside temperature display** (In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade) 314

3 **"DUAL"** (Temperature setting mode change button) 306, 308

4 **Air flow control buttons** 308

5 **Passenger side temperature display** (In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)

6 **Fan speed control buttons** 307

7 **Windshield wiper de−icer button** 312

8 **"A/C"** 310

9 **Air intake control button** 307, 309

10 **Rear window defogger button** 313

11 **Windshield air flow button** 310

12 **"AUTO" button** 306

13 **“PASSENGER TEMP” buttons**
(Passenger side temperature control button)
(Only for the independent mode that display shows **“DUAL”**; mainly for front passenger and secondarily for driver) 306, 308

14 **“TEMP” buttons**
(Driver side temperature control button) (At the independent mode that display shows **“DUAL”**; mainly for driver and secondarily for front passenger)
(At the linked mode that display does not show **“DUAL”**; for driver)
. . . . . 306, 308

(a) Climate control

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

The “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch must be in ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

Push the “MENU” button and select “Climate” to display the air conditioning control screen.

NOTICE

To prevent the 12−volt battery from being discharged, do not leave the air conditioning on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off <the engine is not running>.

INFORMATION

- ***During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.***
- ***To reduce potential odors from occurring:***
  - ***It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.***
  - ***The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic operation mode.***

By pushing the switch above, you can operate the voice command system.

For the operation of the voice command system and the command, see pages 49 and 54.

(b) Using automatic air conditioning system

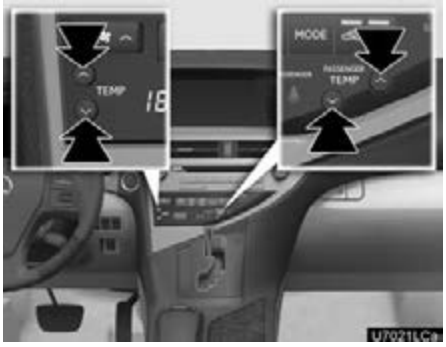
- **Switching to automatic operation mode**

Push the "AUTO" button.

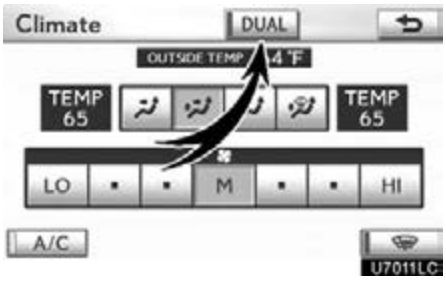
The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Push and hold "∨**OFF"** button to turn the air conditioning system off.

- **Setting the vehicle interior temperature**



Push the "∧" button on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.



"DUAL" is used to set the temperatures independently for the driver's seat and front passenger seat.

When the **"DUAL"** indicator is on, the temperature for the driver's seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted separately.

- **Switching the air intake control to automatic mode**

Push the air intake control button to switch to automatic mode.

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

INFORMATION
You can adjust the setting in automatic mode. (See page 414.)

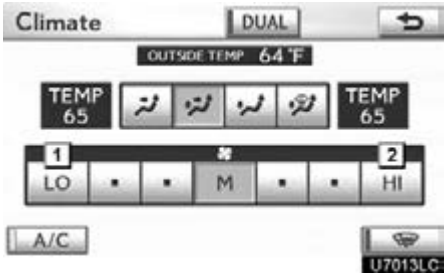
(c) Adjusting the settings manually

- **Setting the fan speed**

To turn on the air conditioning system and adjust the fan speed, push the "∧" button on fan speed control button to increase the fan speed and push the "∨ OFF" button to decrease the fan speed.

To turn the fan off, push and hold the **"∨ OFF"** button.

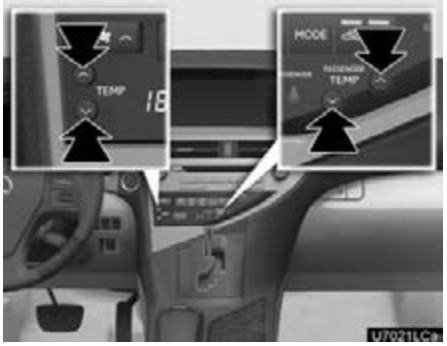
Using the screen—



1 **Fan speed at low**

2 **Fan speed at high**

- **Setting the vehicle interior temperature**



To adjust the temperature setting, push the "∧" button on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and push the "∨" button to decrease the temperature.

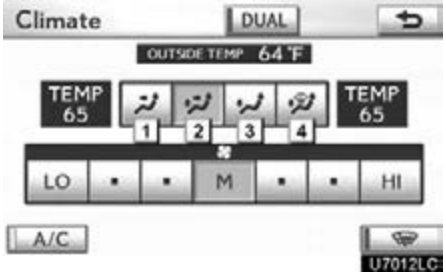
When the **"DUAL"** indicator is on, the temperature for the driver's seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted separately.

- **Switching the air outlets**

To change the air outlets, push the "MODE" button.

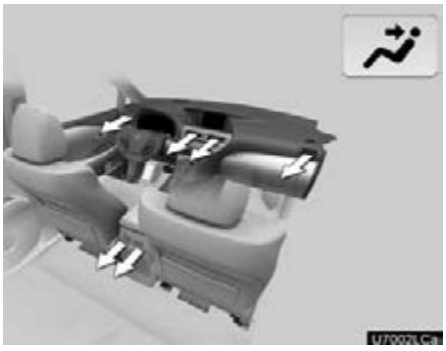
The air outlets used are switched each time the button is pushed.

Using the screen—

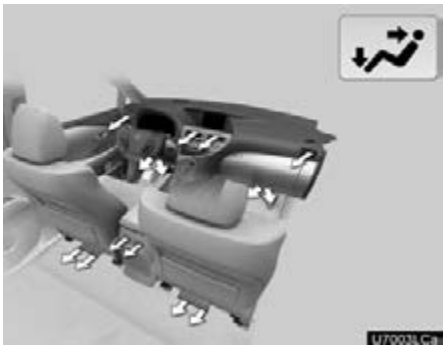


1 **Panel**
2 **Bi−level**
3 **Floor**
4 **Floor/windshield**

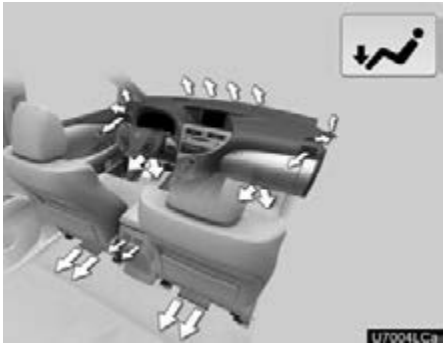
The air flow shown on the display indicates the following.



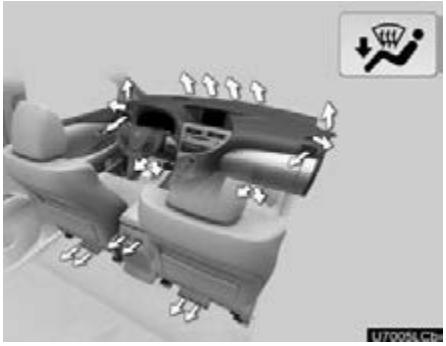
▶ **Air flows to the upper body (Panel)**



▶ Air flows to the upper body and feet (Bi−level)



▶ Air flows to the feet (Floor)



▶ Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates (Floor/windshield)

- **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

▶ **Type A**

Push the air intake control button.

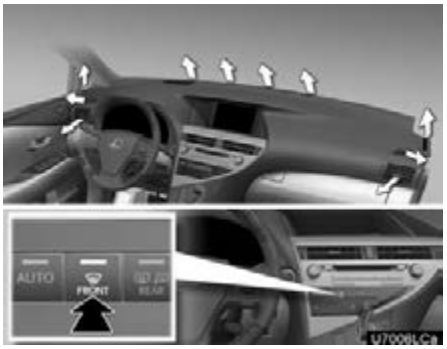
The mode switches between outside air mode (the indicator is off), **"AUTO"** mode and recirculated air mode (the indicator is on) each time the button is pushed.

▶ **Type B**

Push the air intake control button.

The mode switches between recirculated air mode and outside air mode each time the button is pushed.

(d) Defogging the windshield



The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode. It is not possible to return to recirculated air mode when the switch is on.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

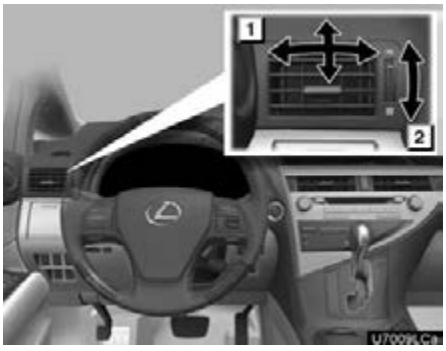
Do not use the windshield air flow button during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

(e) Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ **Front center outlets**

1 **Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down**

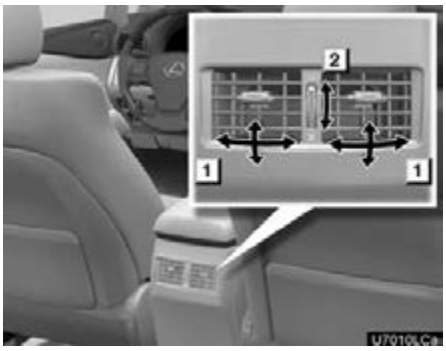
2 **Turn the knob to open or close the vent**



▶ **Front side outlets**

1 **Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down**

2 **Turn the knob to open or close the vent**



▶ Rear outlets

1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

INFORMATION

- *Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode (vehicles with hybrid system)*

  In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

  - *Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity*
  - *Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected*

  To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

  - *Adjust the fan speed*
  - *Turn off Eco drive mode*

- *Customization (vehicles with hybrid system)*

  The air conditioning control restriction of Eco drive mode can be changed to the same setting as that used in normal drive mode. For details, refer to the "Owner's Manual".

- *Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys*

  - *Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch to ON <IGNITION ON> mode will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.*
  - *When the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.*

    The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart access system with push−button start is used to unlock a passenger door.

    Settings for the electronic key and the corresponding door can be changed. Contact your Lexus dealer.

- *Using automatic mode*

  Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

  - *Immediately after the button is pushed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.*

- *Using the system in recirculated air mode*

  The windows will fog up more easily if recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

- ***Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes***

  Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

- ***Window defogger feature***

  Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to outside air mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

- ***When outside air temperature is below 32°F (0°C)***

  The cooling and dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is on.

- ***When the indicator light on "A/C" flashes***

  Select "A/C" to turn off the cooling and dehumidification function and turn it on again. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light continues to flash. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- ***Automatic air intake change mode***

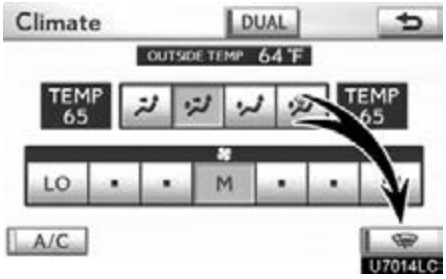
  In automatic mode, the system automatically switches between recirculated air and outside air modes according to whether the system detects harmful substances such as exhaust gas in the air outside.

  If you select automatic mode when only the fans are operating, the air conditioning system will turn on automatically.

(f) Windshield wiper de−icer (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

The windshield wiper de−icer can be operated when the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ON <IGNITION ON> mode.



Turns the windshield wiper de−icer on/off.

The windshield wiper de−icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

When the windshield wiper de−icer is on

Do not touch the lower part of the windshield or the side of the front pillars, as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

(g) Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging

To turn the electric rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger on, push the button above.

The "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch must be in ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

The thin heater wires on the inside of the rear window and the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the surface.

Keep your hands off the mirror faces when the system is on.

The indicator light is on when the defogger is operating.

CAUTION

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on, do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirror as it can become very hot and burn you.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

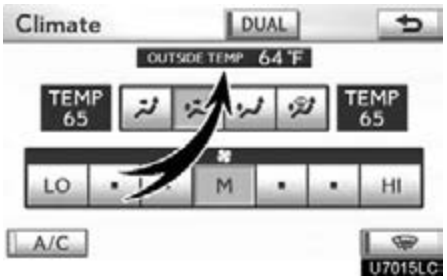
If further defrosting or defogging is desired, simply actuate the switch again. When the surface has cleared, push the button once again to turn the defogger off. Continuous use may cause the 12−volt battery to discharge, especially during stop−and−go driving. The defogger is not designed to dry rain water or to melt snow.

If the outside rear view mirrors are heavily coated with ice, use a spray de−icer before operating the system.

NOTICE

- ***When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.***
- ***To prevent the12−volt battery from being discharged, turn the switch off when the hybrid system is off <the engine is not running>.***

(h) Outside temperature display



Outside temperature is displayed on the screen.

The displayed temperature ranges from −40°F (−40°C) up to 122°F (50°C).

If the temperature shows "– –" or "E", take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 15.5 mph [25 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

SECTION 9

REAR VIEW MONITOR SYSTEM

● Rear view monitor system 316

Rear view monitor system —

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while backing up. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This allows the image to appear in the same manner as that of the rear view mirror.

To display the rear view image on the screen, shift the shift lever to "R" when the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

If you move the shift lever out of the "R", the screen returns to the previous screen. Operating another function of the navigation system will display another screen.

Vehicles with intuitive parking assist–sensor — when the intuitive parking assist–sensors are turned on and an obstacle is detected in front of or behind your vehicle, a warning appears on the right top of the rear view monitor. For details, see "Intuitive parking assist" on page 334.

The rear view monitor system is a supplement device intended to assist back up. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never depend on the rear view monitor system entirely when backing up. Always make sure your intended path is clear.**

  Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- **Never back up while looking only at the screen. The image on the screen is different from actual conditions. Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces will differ from actual distance. If you back up while looking only at the screen, you may hit a vehicle, a person or an object. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirrors before proceeding.**
- **Do not use the system when the back door is not completely closed.**
- **Use your own eyes to confirm the vehicle's surroundings, as the displayed image may become faint or dark, and moving images will be distorted, or not entirely visible when the outside temperature is low. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirror before proceeding.**
- **Do not use the system in the following cases:**
  - **On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow.**
  - **When using tire chains or emergency tires.**
  - **On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.**

NOTICE

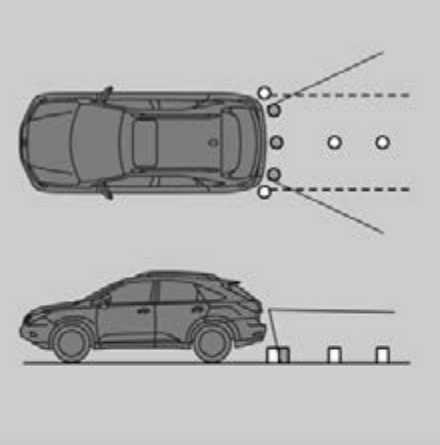
- *If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Be sure to have the camera's position and mounting angle checked at your Lexus dealer.*
- *As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.*
- *Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it can not transmit a clear image.*
- *If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.*
- *Do not expose the camera to strong impact as this may cause a malfunction.*
- *Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.*
- *When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.*
- *When replacing the tires, please consult your Lexus dealer. If you replace the tires, the area displayed on the screen may change.*

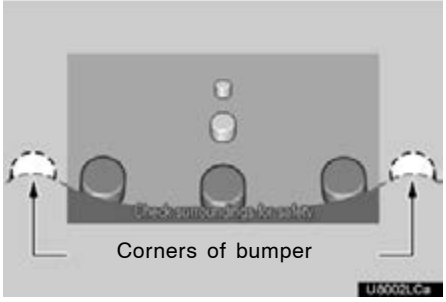
INFORMATION

If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.

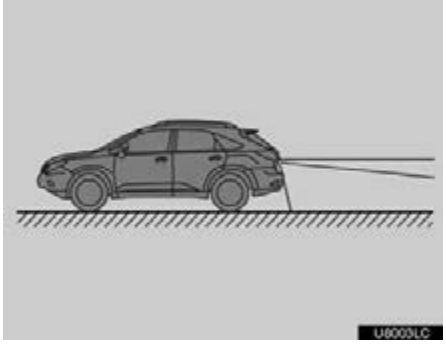
- **Area displayed on screen**

Image is displayed approximately level on screen.





The area detected by the camera is limited. The camera does not detect objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper.



The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

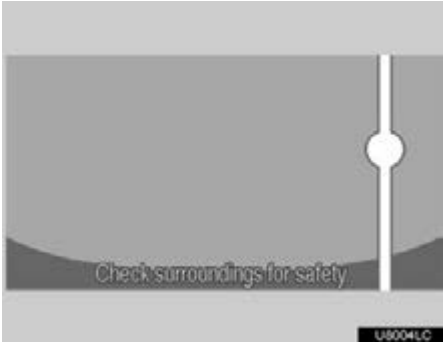
- **The rear view monitor system camera**

The rear view monitor system camera is located on the back door as shown in the illustration.

In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning.

- In the dark (for example, at night)
- When the temperature near the lens is high or low
- When water droplets are adhering to the camera, or when humidity is high (for example, when it rains)
- When foreign matter (for example, snow or mud) is adhering to the camera
- When the camera has scratches or dirt on it
- When the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens

NOTICE
The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, the smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect—A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

SECTION 10

SIDE MONITOR

● Side monitor 322

Side monitor —

The side monitor assists the driver in checking the safety of the vehicle's surroundings by displaying an image of the view in front of and to the side of the front passenger side of the vehicle. The side camera is mounted on the underside of the front passenger side outside rear view mirror.

The side monitor can be activated even when the outside rear view mirrors are folded.

CAUTION

- **Always make sure to check all around the vehicle with your own eyes when driving.**
- **Due to the property of the side camera lens, the position of and distance to people or objects displayed differs from actual position and distance. (See page 324.)**
- **Never depend on the side monitor only. Use caution just as you would when driving any other vehicle.**
- **Never drive while looking only at the screen as the image on the screen is different from actual conditions. If you drive while looking only at the screen, you may hit a person or an object, resulting in an accident. When driving, be sure to check the vehicle's surroundings with your own eyes and the vehicle's mirrors.**
- **Do not use the side monitor in the following cases:**
  - **On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow**
  - **When using tire chains or emergency tires**
  - **When the hood or the front passenger door is not completely closed**
  - **On roads that are not flat, such as slopes**
- **When the outside temperature is low, the displayed image may become faint or dark. Moving images will be distorted or not entirely visible, so be sure to check the vehicle's surroundings with your own eyes and the vehicle's mirrors while driving.**

NOTICE

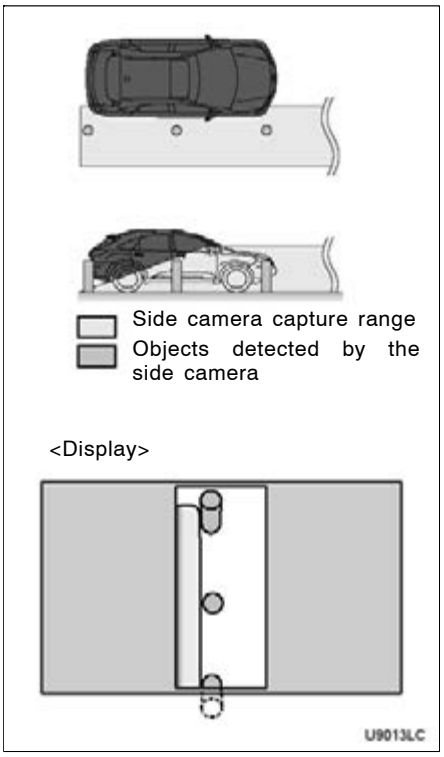
When replacing the tires, please consult your Lexus dealer. If you replace the tires, the area displayed on the screen may change.

INFORMATION

- *The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle status or road conditions.*
- *The area of the image captured by the side camera is limited. The side camera does not display objects too close to or directly under the corners of the bumpers on the front passenger side.*
- *Due to the property of the side camera lens, the perceived distance from images that appear on the screen differs from the actual distance.*
- *In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, but this is not a malfunction:*
  - *In the dark (for example, at night)*
  - *When the temperature near the lens is high or low*
  - *When there are water droplets on the camera lens, or when humidity is high (for example, when it rains)*
  - *When foreign matter such as mud is stuck to the side camera*
  - *When the camera has scratches or dirt on it*
  - *When the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens*
- *The following symptoms may occur, but do not indicate a malfunction:*
  - *The camera may fog up when humidity is high (for example, when it rains).*
  - *When driving at night, ambient lights such as the lights of the vehicles ahead and building lighting may be reflected into the image.*
- *The center or four corners of the image may decrease in definition.*
- *As the procedure is the same, follow the instructions for navigation screen adjustment to adjust the side monitor. (See page 36.)*
- *When the outside rear view mirrors are folded, the mirror base obstructs the side camera's view. In this case, the driver cannot use the side monitor to check the area in front of the vehicle.*

— Area displayed on the screen

<Area of the image captured by the side camera>



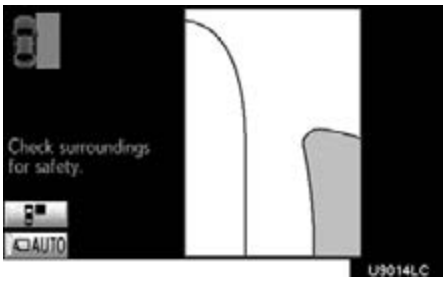
The front passenger side of the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

- **When a 3−dimensional object is near the vehicle**

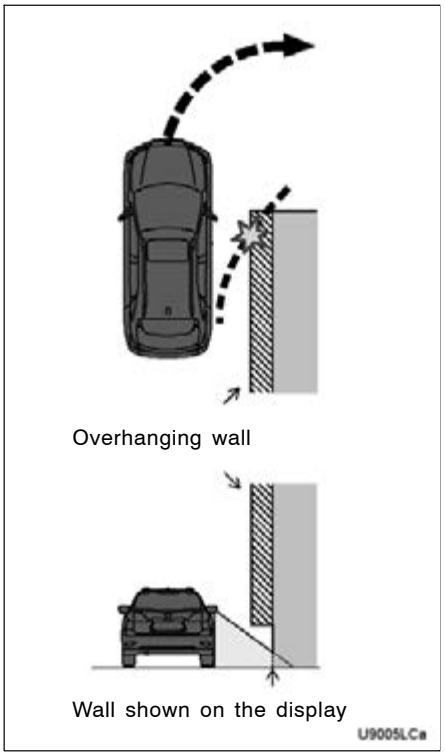
If a 3−dimensional object such as an overhanging wall is present near the vehicle, observe the following precautions to avoid a collision:

WHEN THE COURSE IS NEAR AN OBSTACLE

<Display>



<Vehicle status>



On the display, it appears that the vehicle will not hit the wall. In reality, the overhanging part of the wall is in the way, and the vehicle may collide with it. When the course is close to an obstacle, be sure to check the vehicle's surroundings with your own eyes and the vehicle's mirrors.

- **Side camera**

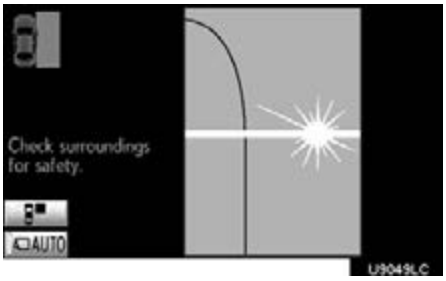
NOTICE

Observe the following precautions to ensure that the side monitor functions properly:

- ***Do not hit the camera or subject it to strong impacts as this may cause its position and mounting angle to change.***
- ***As the camera is water proof, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. Doing so may cause incorrect operation.***
- ***Do not scrub the camera lens roughly or clean it with a hard brush or abrasive cleaner. Doing so may damage the lens and adversely affect the image.***
- ***As the camera cover is resin, do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coating agent to adhere to it. If this happens, wipe clean as soon as possible.***
- ***Do not expose the side camera to sudden temperature changes such as by pouring hot water on the vehicle in cold weather.***
- ***If the side camera is hit, its position and mounting angle may change. Be sure to have the side camera checked by your Lexus dealer.***
- ***Be careful when driving on rough roads as the surface of the camera may be damaged by flying stones or other debris.***
- ***When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.***

INFORMATION

If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the side camera, the smear effect* peculiar to CCD cameras may occur.

*: Smear effect is a phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

— Activating the side monitor

To display the side view, push the side camera button with the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode and vehicle speed at 7 mph (12 km/h) or less.

- Pushing the side camera button again changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as navigation screen. Each push of the button changes the screen as follows:

Navigation or other display

↓ ↑

Side view monitor display

- If the side camera button is pushed when the rear view monitor system is displayed, the side monitor will appear.

- **Cancelation of the side monitor**

In the following situations, the side monitor will be canceled:

When vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h)

When the side camera button is pushed

When the shift lever is shifted to “R”.

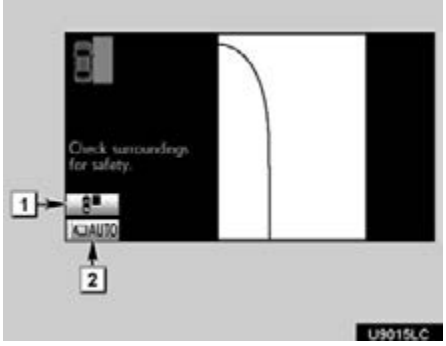
Any of the mode buttons around the display, such as **“MENU”** is pushed.

— Side monitor

The image captured by the side camera is displayed on the screen.

This image can be used to help check the safety of the front passenger side of the vehicle when making a turn to that side, as well as when starting off and stopping.

- **Button on the screen**



1 Display area button

Selecting this button changes between overall view and enlarged front view. (See page 330.)

2 Automatic display button

Selecting this button puts the side monitor in automatic display mode.

- Select this button to turn automatic display mode on/off.
- The indicator on the button illuminates during automatic display mode.

(a) Automatic display mode

In addition to being able to display the side view using the side camera button, automatic display mode is available. In automatic display mode, the side monitor is activated automatically according to vehicle speed.

In automatic mode, the side monitor will automatically appear in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is shifted to a forward driving position or “N”
- When vehicle speed is reduced to approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) or less with the shift lever in any position other than “R”

- **Setting automatic display mode**

Select the automatic display button.

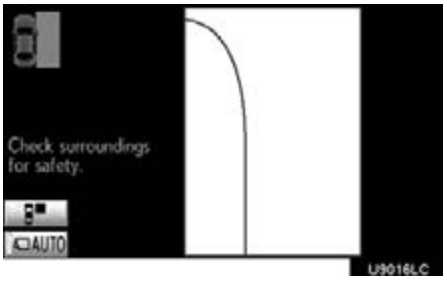
Side monitor (See page 327.)

(b) Display area modes

The side view monitor system has the following 2 display area modes:

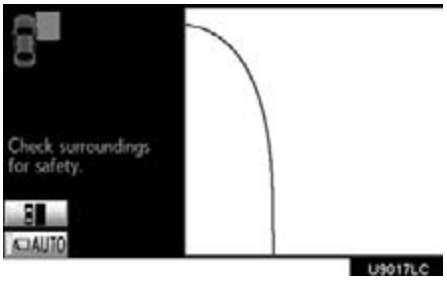
Overall display mode:

<Overall display mode>



This default mode displays the entire view captured by the camera.

<Enlarged front view mode>

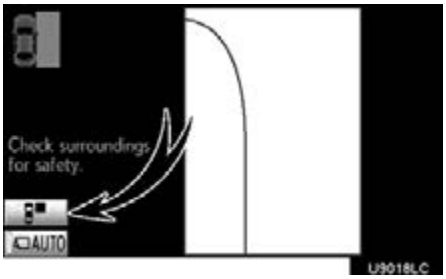


This mode can be used when an enlarged front view is needed.

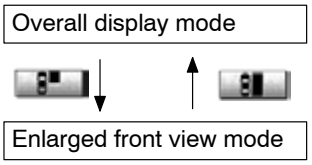
- This mode is not available when the outside rear view mirrors are folded.

- **Changing display area modes**

Select the display area button.



- Each time the button is selected, the mode will change as follows:



- When the outside rear view mirrors are folded, enlarged front view mode is not available. (The display area button will not be displayed on the screen.)
- If the outside rear view mirrors are folded when the screen is in enlarged front view mode, the screen will automatically change to overall display mode. After changing to overall display mode, the screen will not return to enlarged front view mode even if the mirrors are extended.

CAUTION

When the side monitor is in enlarged front view mode, the target object may not be shown on the screen. Even if the object is not visible, do not readjust the steering wheel or steer outside the guide lines until the vehicle passes the object as this may result in a collision.

— When the 12−volt battery is disconnected or the system initialization screen appears on the display

In the following situations, be sure to perform the initialization procedure:

- When the 12−volt battery is disconnected
- When the side monitor changes to the system initialization screen due to 12−volt battery discharge

<System initialization screen>

- **Initialization procedures**

Perform either of the following procedures:

- With the vehicle stopped in a safe place, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, then all the way to the right. (It does not matter which direction you turn the wheel to first.)
- Drive on a straight, uncongested road for approximately 5 minutes or more.

When the screen returns to the original display, correction is complete.

NOTICE

If the initialization screen remains on after performing initialization procedures, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Select "?" on the initialization screen to show the help screen.

When the procedure shown on the display has been performed and the screen returns to the original display, the setting is complete.

If the initialization screen or the help screen remains on, have the system inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Selecting **"OK"** will return the display to the initialization screen.

SECTION 11

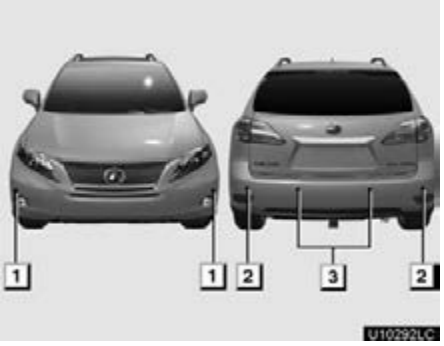
INTUITIVE PARKING ASSIST

● Intuitive parking assist 334

Intuitive parking assist —

The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

- **Types of sensors**



1 **Front corner sensors**
2 **Rear corner sensors**
3 **Rear center sensors**

- **Setting the intuitive parking assist mode**

1. Push the menu switch.

The multi−information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2. Push the “ENTER” switch upwards or downwards until the intuitive parking assist−sensor mark appears in the multi−information display.

3. Push the “ENTER” switch to select “ON”.

The intuitive parking assist−sensor indicator will be displayed.

Each pushing of the switch turns the intuitive parking assist−sensor on and off.

To turn on: Push the switch. The buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

To turn off: Push the switch again.

Push the menu switch to change to the normal display.

— Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the graphic is shown on the multi−information display and navigation display according to position and distance to the obstacle.

- **Multi−information display**

1 **Front corner sensors operation**

2 **Rear corner sensors operation**

3 **Rear center sensors operation**

- **Navigation display**

WHEN THE VEHICLE IS MOVING FORWARD

The graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (See page 415.)

WHEN THE VEHICLE IS MOVING BACKWARD

A simplified image is displayed on the right upper corner of the screen when an obstacle is detected.

— The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

CORNER SENSORS

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example	–			
Buzzer	–	Medium	Fast	Continuous

CENTER SENSORS

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example				
Buzzer	Slow	Medium	Fast	Continuous

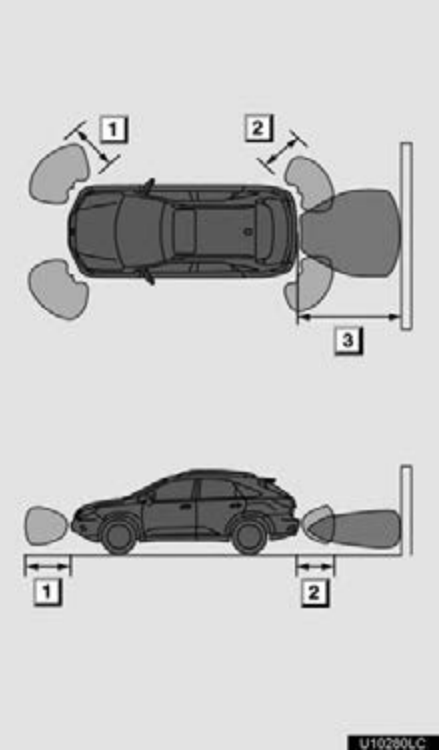
- **Detection level and approximate distance to an obstacle**

Level	1	2	3	4
Front corner sensors	–	2.0 to 1.6 ft. (60 to 47.5 cm)	1.6 to 1.2 ft. (47.5 to 35 cm)	1.2 ft. (35 cm) or less
Rear corner sensors	–	1.6 to 1.2 ft. (50 to 37.5 cm)	1.2 to 0.8 ft. (37.5 to 25 cm)	0.8 ft. (25 cm) or less
Rear center sensors	4.9 to 2.0 ft. (150 to 60 cm)	2.0 to 1.5 ft. (60 to 45 cm)	1.5 to 1.2 ft. (45 to 35 cm)	1.2 ft. (35 cm) or less

INFORMATION

Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed. (See page 415.)

— Detection range of the sensors



1 **Approximately 2.0 ft. (60 cm)**

2 **Approximately 1.6 ft. (50 cm)**

3 **Approximately 4.9 ft. (150 cm)**

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

— Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
  - A sensor is frozen.
  - A sensor is covered in any way.
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
  - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
  - A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
  - The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
  - Towing eyelets are installed.
  - A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
  - The vehicle is approaching a tall or right−angled curb.
  - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
  - A non−genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply−angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

CAUTION

- **Caution when using the intuitive parking assist−sensor**

  Observe the following precautions.

  Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.
  - **Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 6 mph (10 km/h).**
  - **Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.**

NOTICE

Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

System malfunction

- ***An accident will affect the sensors, resulting in system failure.***
- ***If the indicators remain on without a beeping sound, the system may be malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.***

— Intuitive parking assist−sensor failure warning

If an error is detected when the intuitive parking assist−sensor is turned on, the vehicle symbol comes on or flashes with beeping sounds.

However, the sensors functioning properly continue their obstacle detection.

The intuitive parking assist−sensor failure warning display is not given in either of the following operations:

- Changing to another screen
- Turning off the main switch for the intuitive parking assist−sensor

- **When snowflakes or mud gets on the sensors**

▶ **Multi−information display**

If the failure warning does not go off even after the foreign matter is removed, the intuitive parking assist−sensor may be malfunctioning. Have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

- **When the sensor is malfunctioning**

▶ **Multi−information display**

If this message appears, have the intuitive parking assist−sensor checked by your Lexus dealer.

As the intuitive parking assist−sensor might be malfunctioning in the following cases, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The indicator in the instrument cluster does not come on and a beep does not sound even when the intuitive parking assist−sensor main switch is turned on.
- The warning comes on despite no obstacle around the vehicle.

- **Certification**

For vehicles sold in Canada.

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES−001.

Cet appareil ISM est conforme a la norme NMB−001 du Canada.

SECTION 12

SETUP

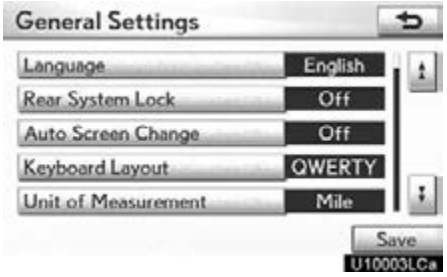
- General settings 342
  (Used for language selection and the on/off settings of operation sounds and automatic screen change.)
- Clock settings 348
  (Used for changing time zones and the on/off settings of daylight saving time.)
- Voice settings 350
  (Voice guidance can be set.)
- Navigation settings 353
  (“Home” and “Preset Destinations” can be set and edited.)
- Detailed navigation settings 354
  (Average cruising speed, displayed screen contents, and POI icon categories can be set.)
- Telephone settings 363
  (Bluetooth® phones can be registered.)
- Audio settings 401
  (Settings are available for portable audio devices and Bluetooth® audio devices players.)
- Vehicle settings 409
  (Vehicle information can be set.)
- Other settings 417
  (Used for changing settings for Lexus Insider and XM® Sports and Stocks.)

General settings

Used for language selection and the on/off settings of operation sounds and automatic screen change.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

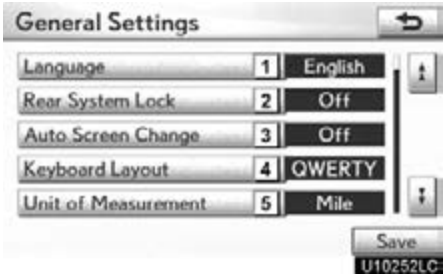
2. Select “General”.

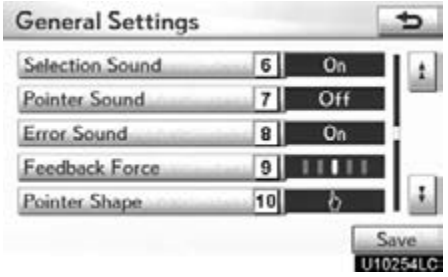


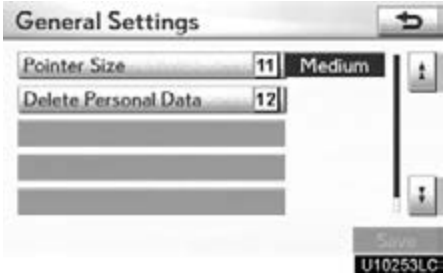
3. Select the items to be set.

4. Select “Save”.

SCREENS FOR GENERAL SETTINGS







On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

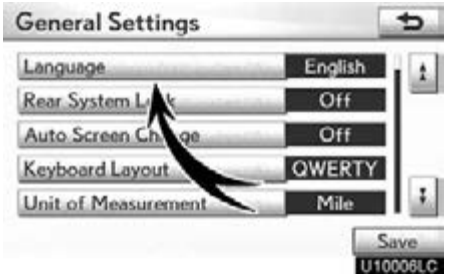
No.	Function
1	You can change the language. (See "● Selecting a language" on page 343.)
2	Rear system lock* can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**. (See "● Rear system lock" on page 344.) * : Vehicles with rear seat entertainment system
3	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected for automatic screen changes from the audio/air conditioner screen to the map. When **"On"** is selected, the screen will automatically return to the map from the audio/air conditioner screen after 20 seconds.
4	Keyboard layout can be changed. (See "● Selecting a keyboard layout" on page 344.)
5	Distance unit can be changed. (See "● Unit of measurement" on page 345.)
6	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected for selection sounds.
7	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected for pointer sounds.
8	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected for error sounds.
9	The strength of the pull from the buttons to the pointer can be adjusted. (See "● Setting a feedback force" on page 346.)
10	Pointer shape can be changed. (See "● Selecting the pointer shape" on page 346.)
11	Pointer size can be changed. (See "● Changing the pointer size" on page 347.)
12	The personal data can be deleted. (See "● Delete personal data" on page 347.)

● **Selecting a language**

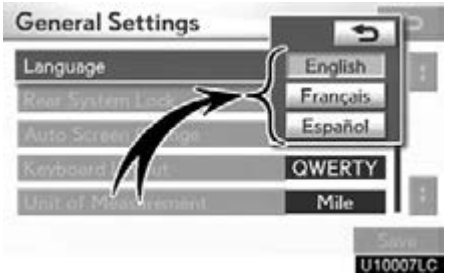
You can change the language.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "General" on the "Setup" screen.



3. Select "Language".



4. Select the desired button.

The previous screen will be displayed.

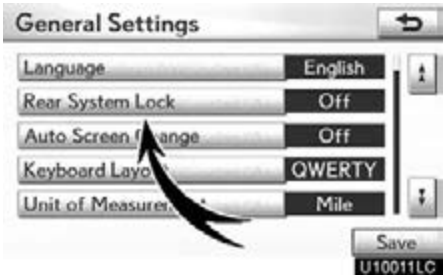
5. Select "Save".

- **Rear system lock (with rear seat entertainment system)**

If the vehicle is equipped with the rear seat entertainment system, the rear seat entertainment system can be locked to prevent rear passengers from operating the entertainment system.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “General” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Select “Rear System Lock”.

4. Select “On” or “Off” and then select “Save”.

“On”: The rear passengers cannot operate the rear seat entertainment system. Only front passengers can operate the system.

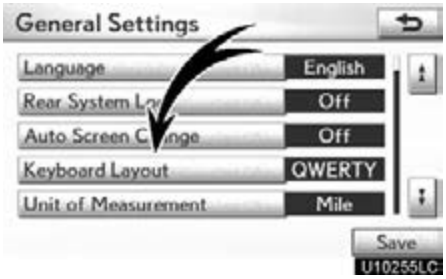
“Off”: Both the front and rear passengers can operate the rear seat entertainment system.

- **Selecting a keyboard layout**

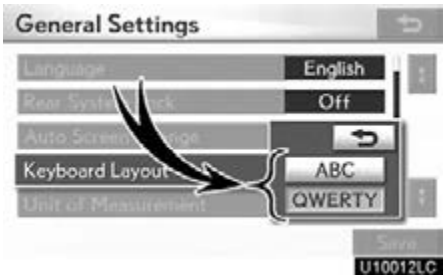
Keyboard layout can be changed.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “General” on the “Setup” screen.



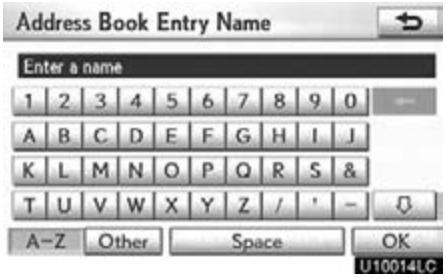
3. Select “Keyboard Layout”.



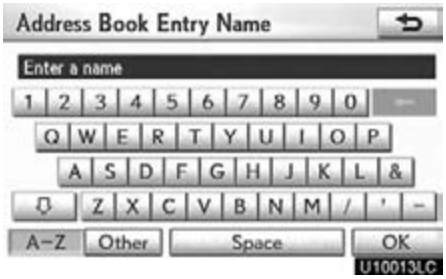
4. Select “ABC” or “QWERTY” of “Keyboard Layout” to choose the keyboard layout.

5. Select “Save”.

LAYOUT TYPE



▶ **"ABC" type**



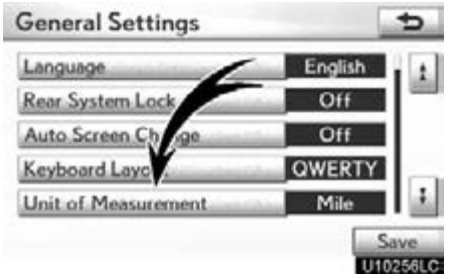
▶ **"QWERTY" type**

- **Unit of measurement**

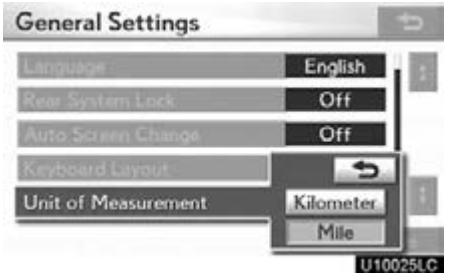
Distance unit can be changed.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "General" on the "Setup" screen.



3. Select "Unit of Measurement".



4. Select "Kilometer" or "Mile".

5. Select "Save".

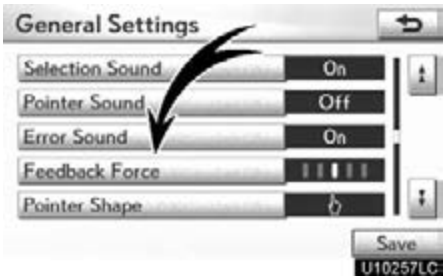
INFORMATION
This function is available only in English or Spanish. To switch language, see "● Selecting a language" on page 343.

- **Setting a feedback force**

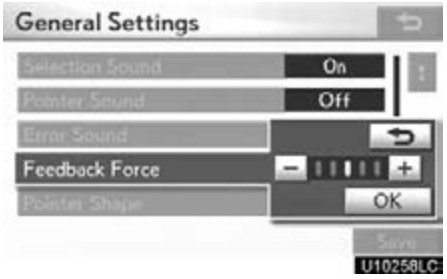
When the pointer moves close to a button, it will be automatically pulled onto that button. The strength of this pull can be adjusted.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “General” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Select “Feedback Force”.



4. Select “+” or “−”.

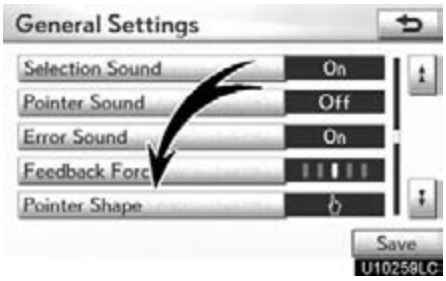
5. Select “OK”.

- **Selecting the pointer shape**

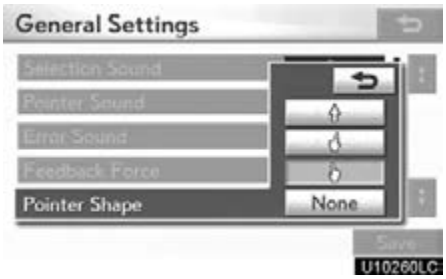
Pointer shape can be changed.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “General” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Select “Pointer Shape”.



4. Select the desired button.

: Change to an arrow.

: Change to a left hand.

: Change to a right hand.

None **:** Display of the pointer can be turned off. (Even if display of the pointer is turned off, the pointer will appear on the map screen as “+”.)

5. Select “Save”.

- **Changing the pointer size**

Pointer size can be changed.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “General” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Pointer Size”.

4. Select the desired button.

5. Select “Save”.

- **Delete personal data**

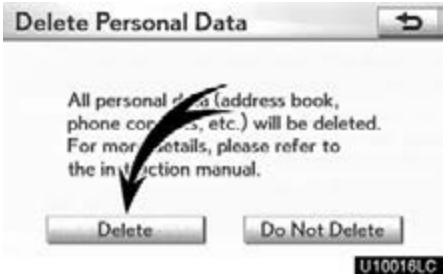
The following personal data can be deleted or returned to their default settings:

- Maintenance conditions
- Maintenance information “off” setting
- Address book
- Areas to avoid
- Previous points
- Route guidance
- Route trace
- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Volume setting
- Details setting

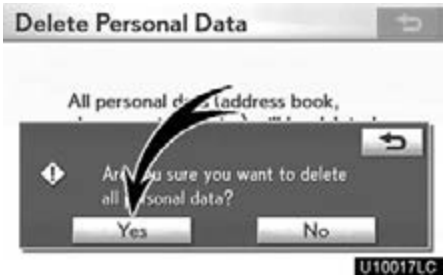
This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

1. **Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.**
2. **Select “General” on the “Setup” screen.**

3. **Select “Delete Personal Data”.**



4. **Select “Delete”.**



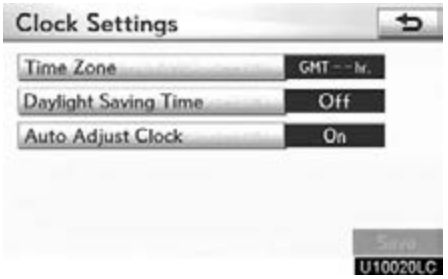
5. **Select “Yes”.**

Clock settings

Used for changing time zones and the on/off settings of daylight saving time.

1. **Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.**

2. **Select “Clock”.**



3. **Select the items to be set.**
4. **Select “Save”.**

SCREEN FOR CLOCK SETTINGS

On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

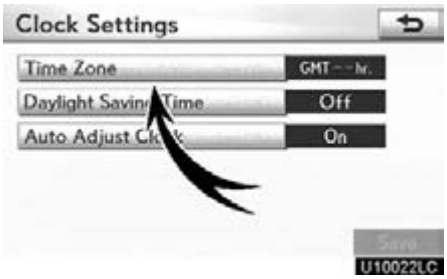
No.	Function
1	Time zone can be changed. (See "● Time zone" on page 349.)
2	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected for daylight savings time.
3	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected for automatic adjustment of the clock.

- **Time zone**

A time zone can be selected and GMT can be set.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Clock" on the "Setup" screen.



3. Select "Time Zone".

4. Select the desired time zone.

If you select **"Other"**, adjust the zone manually.

5. Select "OK".

- **Manual clock setting**

When “Auto adjust clock” is turned **“Off”**, the clock can be manually adjusted.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Clock” on the “Setup” screen.

“Hours” “+”, “−”: Select **“+”** to set the time forward one hour and **“−”** to set the time back one hour.
“Minutes” “+”, “−”: Select **“+”** to set the time forward one minute and **“−”** to set the time back one minute.
“Minutes” “:00”: Rounds to the nearest hour*

*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

3. Select “OK”.

Voice settings

Voice guidance can be set.

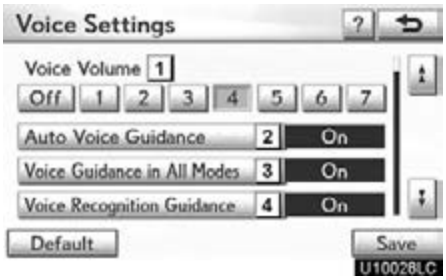
1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Voice”.

3. Select the items to be set.

4. Select “Save”.

SCREEN FOR VOICE SETTINGS



On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

No.	Function
1	The voice guidance volume can be adjusted or switched off. (See "● Voice volume" on page 352.)
2	Voice guidance during route guidance can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**.
3	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected for voice guidance when the audio/air conditioner is used.
4	Voice recognition talkback can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**.
5	When **"On"** is selected, the voice command system can be operated without pressing the talk switch more than once.
6	When using the traffic information function, voice guidance can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**. (See "● Traffic voice guidance" on page 352.)
7	When using the XM NavWeather™ function, the severe weather warning can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**.
8	Voice guidance projection can be set to the "Center" position or the "Driver" position. (See "● Voice guidance speaker" on page 353.)

- **Voice volume**

The voice guidance volume can be adjusted or switched off.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select the desired level by selecting the number.

If voice guidance is not needed, select **"Off"** to disable the feature.

When selected the number or **"Off"** will be highlighted.

4. Select "Save".

- **Traffic voice guidance**

You can receive congestion information through voice guidance while being guided to your destination.

To turn the "Traffic Voice Guidance" on:

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "On" of the "Traffic Voice Guidance".

4. Select "Save".

INFORMATION

- ***This function is available only in English. To select English, see "● Selecting a language" on page 343.***
- ***When the "Traffic Information" indicator is dimmed, "Auto Avoid Traffic", "Traffic Voice Guidance" and "Show Free Flowing Traffic" will not operate.***

- **Voice guidance speaker**

The projection position of voice guidance can be adjusted.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Voice” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Voice Guidance Speaker”.

4. Select “Center” or “Driver”.

5. Select “Save”.

Navigation settings

Points or areas on the map can be registered.

On this screen, the following operations can be performed.

No.	Function
1	**Sets home** (See page 115.)
2	**Sets preset destinations** (See page 117.)
3	**Sets address book** (See page 120.)
4	**Sets area to avoid** (See page 126.)
5	**Deletes previous destinations** (See page 131.)
6	**Detailed navigation settings** (See page 354.)

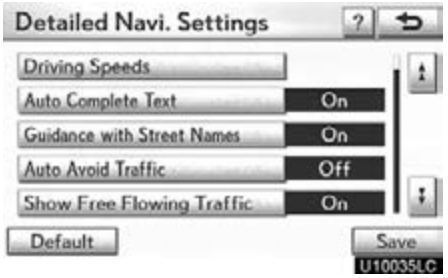
Detailed navigation settings

Average cruising speed, displayed screen contents, and POI icon categories can be set.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.”.

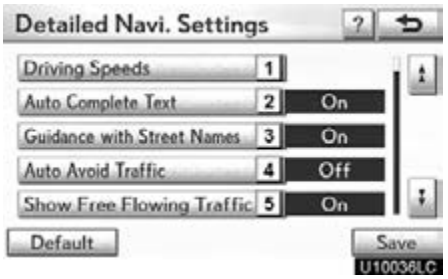
3. Select “Detailed Navi. Settings”.

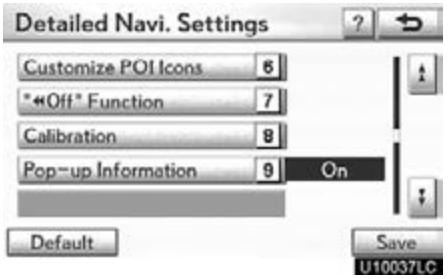


4. Select the items to be set.

5. Select “Save”.

SCREENS FOR NAVIGATION SETTINGS





On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

No.	Function
1	Average cruising speed can be set. (See "● Driving speeds" on page 356.)
2	The automatic input function can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**.
3	During route guidance, voice guidance for the next street name can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**.
4	**"On"** or **"Off"** can be selected to reroute the guidance route automatically to avoid heavy congestion.
5	When **"On"** is selected, freely flowing traffic can be shown with the arrow.
6	Displayed POI icon categories can be set. (See "● POI category change (Select POI icons)" on page 358.)
7	Buttons displayed on the map screen when "◀◀Off" is selected can be set. (See "● Screen layout function ("◀◀Off" function)" on page 359.)
8	The current vehicle position mark can be adjusted manually. Miscalculation of the distance caused by tire replacement can also be adjusted. (See "● Current position/ tire change calibration" on page 360.)
9	Display of pop-up information can be set to **"On"** or **"Off"**. (See "● Pop-up information" on the page 362.)

- **Driving speeds**

The speed that is used for the calculation of the estimated travel time and the estimated arrival time can be set.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Detailed Navi. Settings" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.

4. Select "Driving Speeds".

5. Select ◄ or ► to set the average vehicle speeds for "Residential", "Main Streets", and "Freeways".

To set the default speeds, select **"Default"**.

6. After setting of the desired speeds is completed, select "Save".

INFORMATION

- ***The displayed time to the destination is the approximate driving time that is calculated based on the selected speeds and the actual position along the guidance route.***
- ***The time shown on the screen may vary greatly depending on progress along the route, which may be affected by conditions such as traffic jams and construction work.***
- ***It is possible to display up to 99 hours 59 minutes.***

- **Auto avoid traffic**

The guidance route automatically changes to another route to avoid heavy congestion.

To turn the “Auto Avoid Traffic” on:

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

4. Select “On” of the “Auto Avoid Traffic”.

5. Select “Save”.

When congestion information about the guidance route has been received, a screen will appear to ask you whether to reroute to avoid the congestion.

If you wish to reroute, select **“Yes”**. Another route to allow you to avoid the congestion will appear.

If you do not wish to reroute, select **“No”**.

INFORMATION

When the “Traffic Information” indicator is dimmed, “Auto Avoid Traffic”, “Traffic Voice Guidance” and “Show Free Flowing Traffic” will not operate.

- **Show free flowing traffic**

Freely flowing traffic is shown with the arrow.

To turn the “Show Free Flowing Traffic” on:

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

4. Select “On” of the “Show Free Flowing Traffic”.

5. Select “Save”.

INFORMATION
When the “Traffic Information” indicator is dimmed, “Auto Avoid Traffic”, “Traffic Voice Guidance” and “Show Free Flowing Traffic” will not operate.

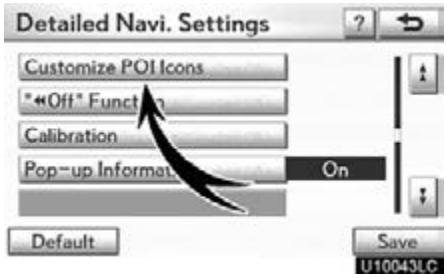
- **POI category change (Select POI icons)**

Select from among the 6 icons displayed on the “Customize POI Icons” screen, so that setting of the icons to be displayed on the map screen can be done easily.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.

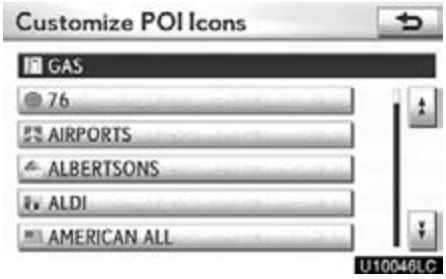


4. Select “Customize POI Icons”.

5. Select the category button to be changed.

6. Select the desired group.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, select **"List All Categories"** to list all POI categories.



7. Select the desired category.

8. Select "OK".

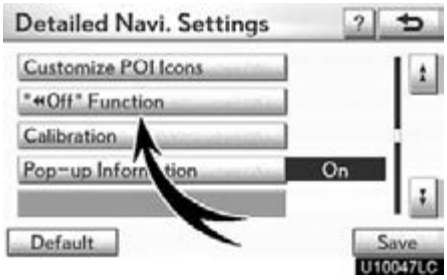
- **Screen layout function ("◀◀Off" function)**

Each screen buttons and current street name on the map screen can be displayed or hidden.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Detailed Navi. Settings" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Select ""◀◀Off" Function".

5. Select the button to be turned off. The button becomes dimmed.

To set the default, select **"Default"**.

6. Select "Save".

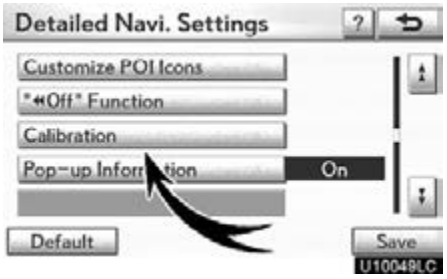
- **Current position/tire change calibration**

The current vehicle position mark can be adjusted manually. Miscalculation of the distance caused by tire replacement can also be adjusted.

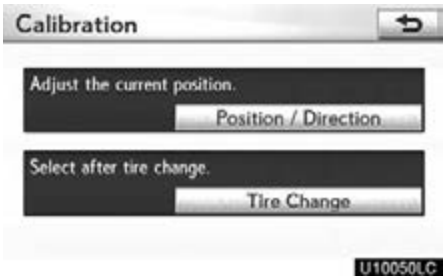
1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Detailed Navi. Settings" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Select "Calibration".



5. Select the desired button.

INFORMATION
For additional information on the accuracy of a current vehicle position, see "Limitations of the navigation system" on page 420.

POSITION/DIRECTION CALIBRATION

When driving, the current vehicle position mark will be automatically corrected by GPS signals. If GPS reception is poor due to location, you can manually adjust the current vehicle position mark.

1. Select "Position / Direction".

2. Select the 8 directional button to move the cursor ⌖ to the desired point on the map.

3. Select "OK".

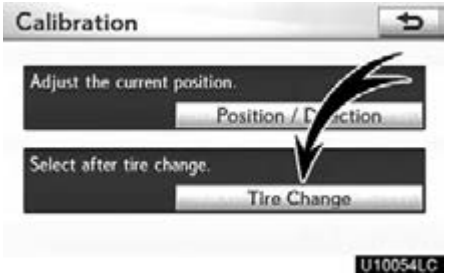
4. Select either the ↓ or ↓ to adjust the direction of the current vehicle position mark.

5. Select "OK".

The map will be displayed.

TIRE CHANGE CALIBRATION

The tire change calibration function will be used when replacing the tires. This function will adjust the miscalculation caused by the circumference difference between the old and new tires. If this procedure is not performed when the tires are replaced, the current vehicle position mark may be incorrectly displayed.



To perform a distance calibration procedure, select "Tire Change" on the "Calibration" screen.

The message appears and the quick distance calibration is automatically started. A few seconds later, a map will be displayed.

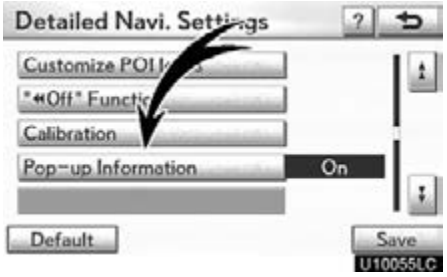
- **Pop−up information**

When the “Pop−up information” is turned on, the pop−up information will be displayed.

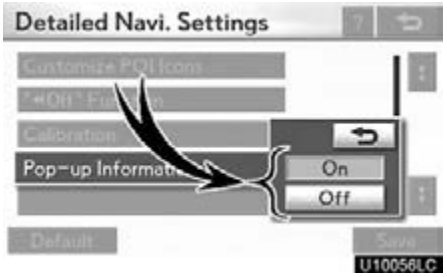
1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Select “Pop−up Information”.



5. Select “On” or “Off”.

6. Select “Save”.

When the “Pop−up Information” is turned off, the following messages will not be displayed.

This message appears when the system is in the POI mode and the map scale is over 0.5 miles (1 km).

The message appears when the map is switched to the dual map screen mode.

Telephone settings —

"Telephone settings" can be changed on the "Phone settings" screen.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

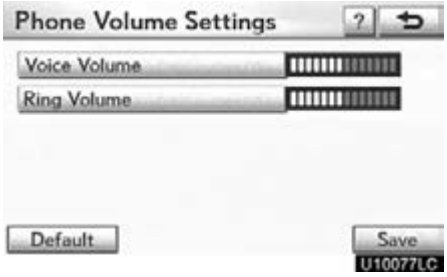
2. Select "Phone".

Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

— Volume setting

You can adjust the voice and ring volume.

1. Select "Volume".



2. Change each setting according to the following procedures.

3. When you complete all settings, select "Save".

Automatic volume settings for high speed

The system will automatically increase the volume by one step up when the speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h).

- **Voice volume setting**

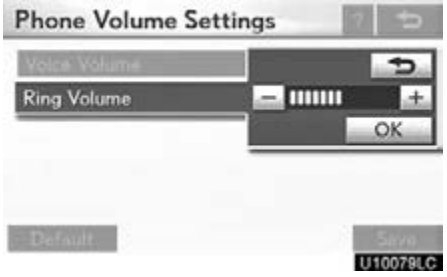
1. Select “Voice Volume”.

2. Select “–” or “+” to adjust the voice volume.

3. Select “OK”.

- **Ring volume setting**

1. Select “Ring Volume”.



2. Select “–” or “+” to adjust the ring volume.

3. Select “OK”.

- **Initializing the settings**

You can initialize the settings.

1. Select “Default”.

2. Select “Yes”.

— Manage phone

"Manage phone" is accessed from the "Connect Phone" screen.

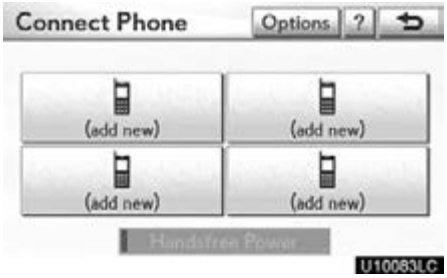
1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Manage Phone".

Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

- **Registering a Bluetooth® phone**



1. Select "(add new)" to register your cellular phone to the system.

2. When this screen is displayed, input the passcode displayed on the screen into the phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select **"Cancel"**.

3. When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

You do not need to enter the phone in case of using the same one.

When this screen is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

When another Bluetooth® device is connected

When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, this screen is displayed.

If you want to disconnect it, select **"Yes"**.

INFORMATION
When you register your phone, Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

You can also register a new Bluetooth® phone in the following way.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Phone”.

3. Select “Manage Phone”.

4. Select “Options”.

5. Select “New Phone”.

6. Select “(empty)” to register your cellular phone to the system.

The following operations are the same as the operation after you select “(add new)”.

- **Selecting a Bluetooth® phone**

In case you register more than one Bluetooth® phone, you need to choose which phone to connect to.

You can select from up to 4 registered Bluetooth® phones.

"(add new)" is displayed when you have not registered a Bluetooth® phone yet.

Although you can register up to 4 Bluetooth® phones in the system, only one Bluetooth® phone can function at a time.

1. Select the phone to connect.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.

2. The "Connect Bluetooth*" screen is displayed.

3. When the result message is displayed, you can use the Bluetooth® phone.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

When you connect the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

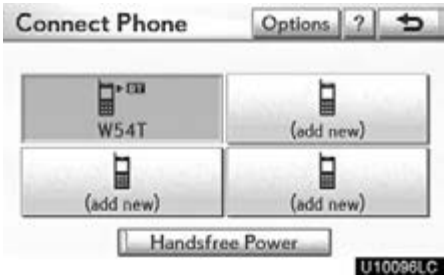
When another Bluetooth® device is connected

When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, this screen is displayed.

If you want to disconnect it, select **"Yes"**.

Setting the handsfree power

You can select the state of "Handsfree Power".



The state changes between "On" and "Off" every time you select "Handsfree Power".

For the "Handsfree Power", see "Changing the handsfree power" on page 395.

- **Editing the Bluetooth® phone**

You can see the information of the Bluetooth® phone on the system or edit.

"Device Name"

. . . . . The name of the Bluetooth® phone which is displayed on the screen. You can change it to a desired name.

If you change the device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

"Device Address"

. . . . . The device address is unique to each phone. You cannot change it.

If you have two registered Bluetooth® phones with the same device name, you cannot distinguish one from the other without referring to the device address.

1. Select "Options".

2. Select "Edit Phones".

3. Select the phone to edit.

4. This screen is displayed.

If you want to change the device name, select "Edit".

5. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.

6. Confirm the device name and select "OK".

- **Deleting a Bluetooth® phone**

1. Select "Options".

2. Select "Remove Phones".

3. Select the desired phone or select "Select All", then select "Delete".

You can select multiple phones and delete them at the same time.

4. Select "Yes".

INFORMATION
When you delete a Bluetooth® phone, the phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

- **By voice recognition**

You can operate "Connect Phone" by giving a command.

"Connect Phone" includes "Select Phone", "Add New Phone" and "Handsfree Power Off" (On).

The operating procedure is similar to other voice recognition. (For the operation of voice recognition, see "Voice command system" on page 49.)

When you select the command of "Add New Phone", you must carry out the following operation on the screen.

— Phonebook

INFORMATION

Phonebook data is managed independently for every registered phone. When another phone is connected, you cannot read another phone's registered data.

"Phonebook" is accessed from the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Phonebook".

Please do each setting from this screen.

— Setting the phonebook

"Setting the phonebook" is accessed from the "Contacts" screen.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Phonebook".

4. Select "Manage Contacts".

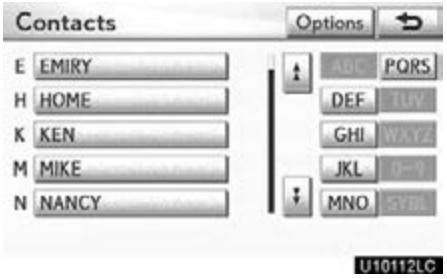
Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also display the "Contacts" screen in the following way.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Contacts".



4. Select "Options".

5. Select "Manage Contacts".

- **Transferring a phone number**

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system. The phonebook manages a maximum of 4 phonebooks in all. Data for up to 1000 people (up to 3 numbers per person) can be registered in each phonebook.

Transfer contacts while the hybrid system is operating <the engine is running>.

1. Select "Transfer Contacts".

2. Select "Replace Contacts" or "Add Contacts".

In case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen is displayed.

3. Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

This screen appears while transferring. To cancel it, select **"Cancel"**. If the transferring is interrupted on the way, the phonebook data transferred until then can be memorized in the system.

When you have selected "Replace Contacts":

If your cellular phone does not support PBAP or OPP profiles, you cannot use this function.

If your phone supports PBAP profile, you can transfer the phonebook data without operating your phone.

If your phone does not support PBAP profile, you must transfer the phonebook data by operating your phone.

When you have selected "Add Contacts":

If your cellular phone does not support the Bluetooth® OPP profile, you cannot use this function.

If your cellular phone supports OPP profile, you can transfer the phonebook data by operating your phone.

4. In case that you have selected "Add Contacts", this screen is displayed.

If you want to transfer another phonebook, select "Yes".

When another Bluetooth® device is connected

When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, this screen is displayed.

If you want to disconnect it, select **"Yes"**.

INFORMATION
Bluetooth® audio will disconnect during transfer on phonebook data. In this case, it will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. (It will not be reconnected depending the phone you are using.)

- **Registering the phonebook data**

You can register the phonebook data.

Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered.

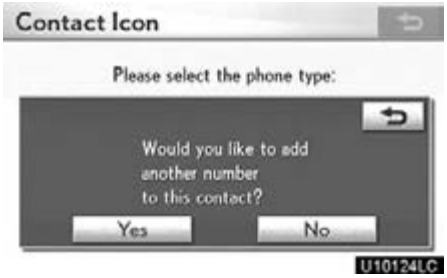
1. Select "New Contact".

2. Use the software keyboard to input the name and select "OK".

3. Input the phone number and select "OK".

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.

4. Select the phone type.



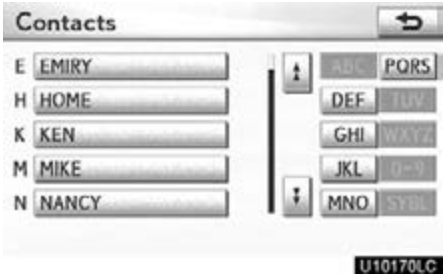
5. When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, this screen is displayed.

When you want to add a number to this contact, select "Yes".

- **Editing the phonebook data**

You can register the phone number in "Phone#1", "Phone#2" and "Phone#3" separately.

1. Select "Edit Contacts".



2. Select the data you want to edit.

3. Select "Edit" for the desired name or number.

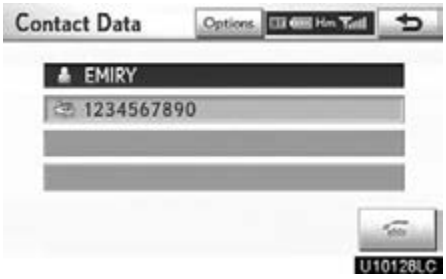
4. Edit the name or the number. (See "● Registering the phonebook data" on page 376.)

5. When you complete the edit, select "Save".

You can also display the “Edit Contact” screen in the following ways.

From “Contact Data” screen

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.
2. Select “Phone”.
3. Select “Contacts”.
4. Select the desired data from the list.

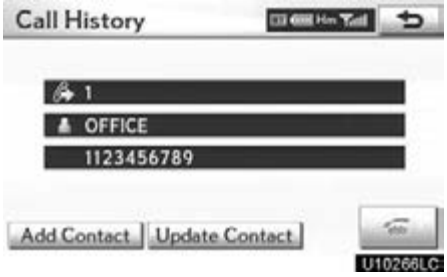


5. Select “Options”.

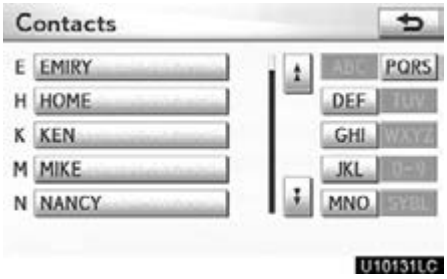
6. Select “Edit Contact”.

From “Call History” screen

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.
2. Select “Phone”.
3. Select “Call History”.
4. Select the desired number from the list.



5. Select “Add Contact” or “Update Contact”.



6. In case that you have selected “Update Contact”, this screen is displayed. Select the desired data from the list.

- **Deleting the phonebook data**

You can delete the data.

When you release your car, delete all your data on the system.

1. Select “Delete Contacts”.

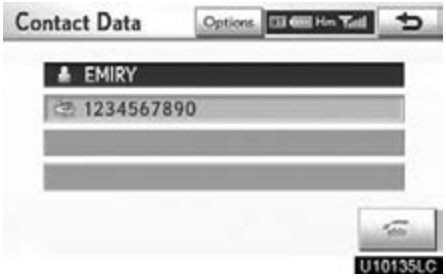
2. Select the desired data or select “Select All”, then select “Delete”.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

3. Select “Yes”.

You can also delete it in the following way.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.
2. Select “Phone”.
3. Select “Contacts”.
4. Select the desired data from the list.



5. Select “Options”.

6. Select “Delete Contact”.

7. Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION
When you delete a Bluetooth® phone, the phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

— Speed dials setting

“Speed dials setting” is accessed from the “Speed Dials” screen.

1. **Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.**
2. **Select “Phone”.**
3. **Select “Phonebook”.**

4. **Select “Manage Speed Dials”.**

Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also display the “Speed Dials” screen in the following way.

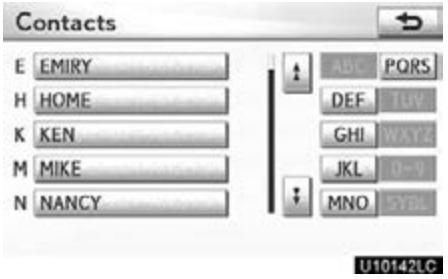
1. **Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.**
2. **Select “Phone”.**
3. **Select “Speed Dials”.**

4. **Select “Options”.**

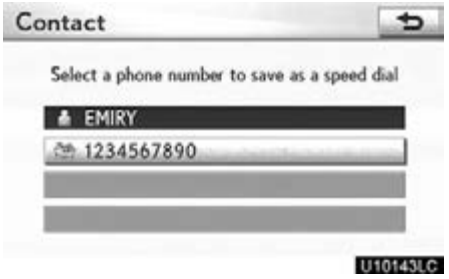
- **Registering the speed dial**

You can register the desired phone number from phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

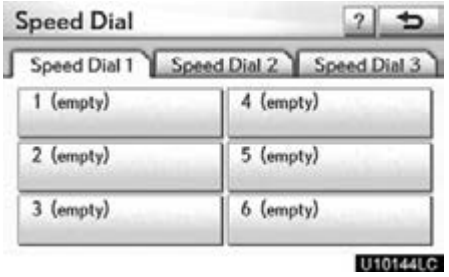
1. Select “New Speed Dial”.



2. Select the data you want to register.



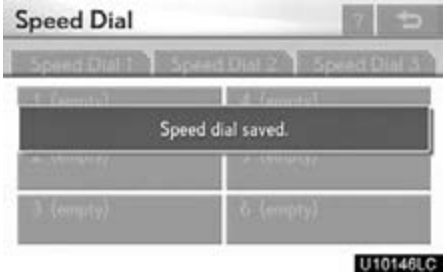
3. Select the desired phone number.



4. Select the button you want to register in.

5. If you select a button you registered before, this screen is displayed.

Select “Yes” if you want to replace it.



6. When this screen is displayed, the operation is complete.

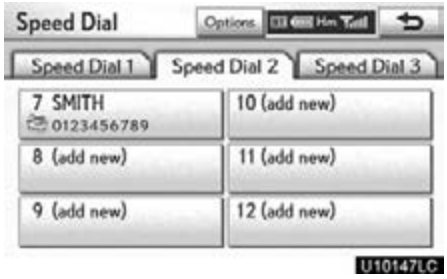
You can also register the speed dial in the following ways.

From “Speed Dial” screen

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.

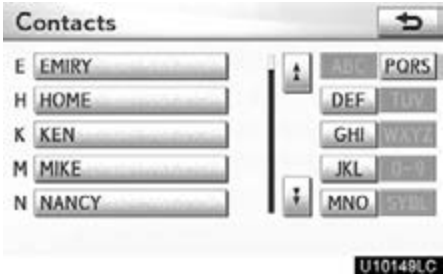
2. Select “Phone”.

3. Select “Speed Dials”.

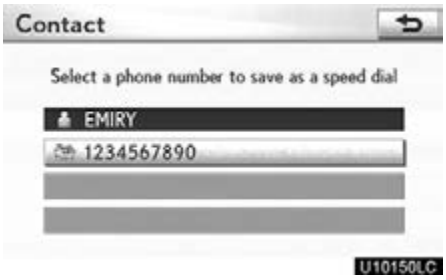


4. Select “(add new)”.

5. Select “Yes” to set new speed dial.



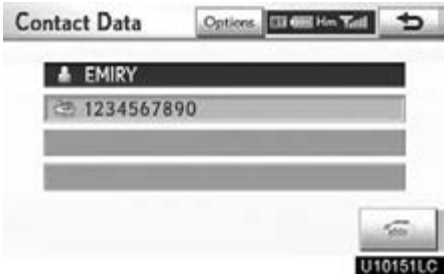
6. Select the data you want to register.



7. Select the desired phone number.

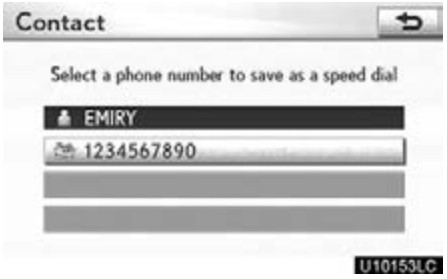
From "Contact Data" screen

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".
2. Select "Phone".
3. Select "Contacts".
4. Select the desired data from the list.



5. Select "Options".

6. Select "Set Speed Dial".



7. This screen is displayed.

The following operations are the same as the operation when you operate it from “Setup” screen.

- Editing the speed dial

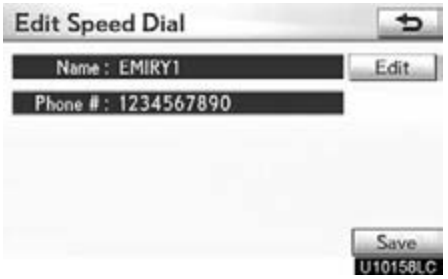
You can edit the speed dial.

1. Select “Edit Speed Dials”.

2. Select the button you want to edit.

3. Select “Edit”.

4. Use the software keyboard to input the name.



5. Select "Save".

- **Deleting the speed dial**

You can delete the speed dial.

1. Select "Delete Speed Dials".

2. Select the desired data or select "Select All", then select "Delete".

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

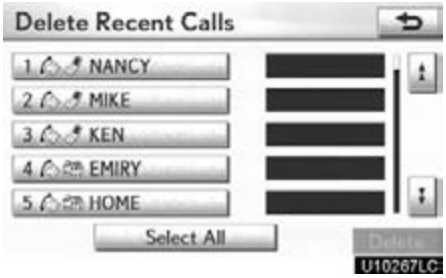
3. Select “Yes”.

— Deleting call history

You can delete the call history.

1. Select “Delete Call History”.

2. Select the desired history to delete.



3. Select the desired data or select "Select All", then select "Delete".

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

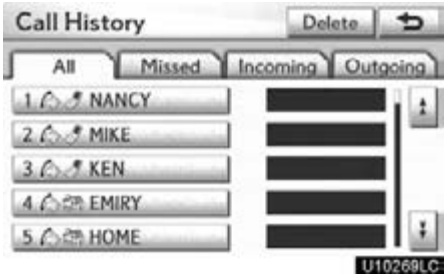
4. Select "Yes".

You can also delete the call history in the following way.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Call History".



4. Select "Delete".

5. This screen is displayed.

The following operations are the same as the operation when you operate it from "Setup" screen.

You can similarly operate other call history.

— Setting the voice tag

"Setting the voice tag" is done by displaying "Voice Tags" screen.

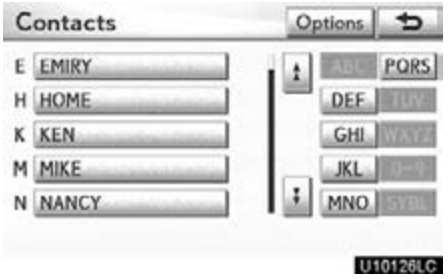
1. **Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".**
2. **Select "Phone".**
3. **Select "Phonebook".**

4. **Select "Manage Voice Tags".**

Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also display "Voice Tags" screen in the following way.

1. **Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".**
2. **Select "Phone".**
3. **Select "Contacts".**



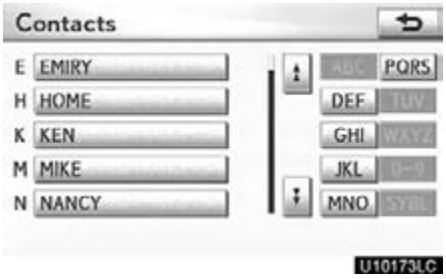
4. **Select "Options".**

5. **Select "Manage Voice Tags".**

- **Registering the voice tag**

You can register a voice tag for up to 20 numbers.

1. Select "New Voice Tag".



2. Select the data you want to register.

3. Select "● REC", and record a voice tag.

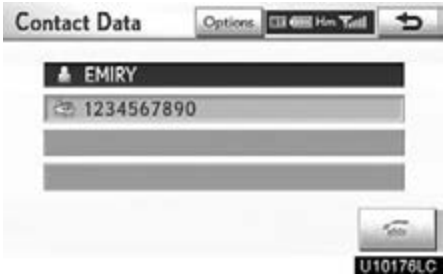
4. Select "▶ Play" to play the voice tag.

When you complete the voice tag registration, select **"OK"**.

INFORMATION
When you use the voice tag, do not change the language setting from the language setting used when registering. ***If they are different, the voice recognition can't recognize the voice tag that you have registered.***

You can also register the voice tag in the following way.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Info./Phone”.
2. Select “Phone”.
3. Select “Contacts”.
4. Select the desired data from the list.



5. Select “Options”.

6. Select “Set Voice Tag”.

7. This screen is displayed.

The following operations are the same as the operation when you operate it from “Setup” screen.

- **Editing the voice tag**

1. Select “Edit Voice Tags”.

2. Select the data you want to edit.

3. This screen is displayed.

The following operations are the same as the operation when you register the voice tag.

- **Deleting the voice tag**

1. Select “Delete Voice Tags”.

2. Select the desired data or select “Select All”, then select “Delete”.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

3. Select “Yes”.

— Bluetooth®

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Bluetooth*".

4. This screen is displayed.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

The information displays the following items.

"Device Name"
. . . . . This name will be displayed on the phone when registering a new device. You can change it.

"Passcode"
. . . . . The password when you register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. You can change it.

"Device Address"
. . . . . This address is unique to the system. You cannot change it. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your phone, refer to it.

If you want to change the settings, refer to the following pages.

When you change the settings, select "Save" after changing them.

- **Changing the Bluetooth® settings**

You can change the Bluetooth® settings according to the following procedures.

Changing the handsfree power

The "Handsfree Power" display shows the following state.

When "Handsfree Power" is **"On"**:

The Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode.

When "Handsfree Power" is **"Off"**:
The Bluetooth® phone is disconnected, and the system will not connect to it next time.

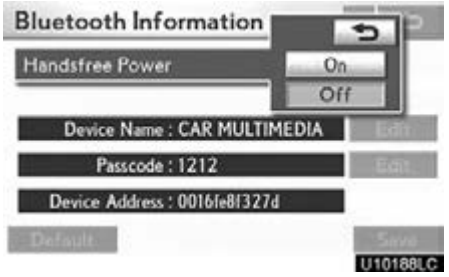
You can select the state of "Handsfree Power".

On: The auto connection is turned on.

Off: The auto connection is turned off.

You can not change the state from "On" into "Off" while driving.

1. **Select "Handsfree Power".**



2. **Select "On" or "Off".**

3. Select “Save”.

In case that the state of “Handsfree Power” is changed from “Off” into “On”, Bluetooth® connection will begin.

When you connect the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

Editing the device name

1. Select “Edit” of “Device Name”.

2. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.

INFORMATION
The device names are common between Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone.
If you change the device name of the phone, the device name of the audio will change at same time.
However, passcodes can be set separately.

Editing the passcode

1. Select “Edit” of “Passcode”.

2. Input a passcode and select “OK”.

- **Initializing the Bluetooth® settings**

You can initialize the settings.

1. Select “Default”.

2. Select “Yes”.

If the state of “Handsfree Power” is changed from “Off” into “On”, Bluetooth® connection will begin.

If you connect a phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

— Details

You can do the detail settings.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Phone".

3. Select "Details".

4. Do each setting according to the following procedures.

5. When you complete each setting, select "Save".

- **Incoming call display**

You can select the method of the incoming call display.

1. Select "Incoming Call Display Mode".

2. Select "Full Screen" or "Drop Down".

"Full Screen" mode

. . . . . When a call is received, the Hands–free screen is displayed and you can operate it on the screen.

"Drop Down" mode

. . . . . The message is displayed on the upper side of the screen. You can only operate the steering switch.

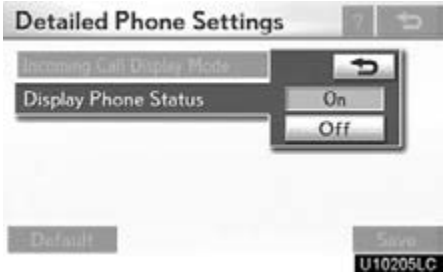
- **The Bluetooth® connection status at start up**

When the "POWER" <"ENGINE START STOP"> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode and the Bluetooth® is automatically connected, the connection check is displayed.

When "Display Phone Status" is "On", this status is displayed.

When "Display Phone Status" is "Off", this status is not displayed.

1. Select "Display Phone Status".



2. Select "On" or "Off".

- **Initializing the settings**

You can initialize the settings.

1. Select “Default”.

2. Select “Yes”.

Audio settings — — Select portable player

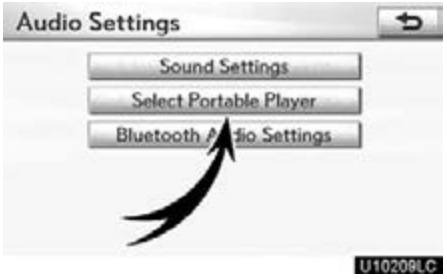
The portable player to connect can be selected. The registered audio information can be confirmed and edited.

- **Selecting a portable player**

If you register a second portable player, either one can be selected for connection.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Audio” on “Setup” screen.



3. Select “Select Portable Player” on “Audio Settings” screen.

You can select from a maximum of two Bluetooth® portable players.

“Empty” is displayed when you have not registered a portable player yet. The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you choose the portable player.

4. Select desired portable player and then select “OK”.

Although you can register up to two portable players in the system, only one portable player can function at a time.

- **Displaying Bluetooth® information**

You can see or change the information of the portable player on the system.

“Device Name”

. . . The name of Bluetooth® portable player which is displayed on the screen. You can change it into a desired name.

“Device Address”

. . . This address is unique to the system. You cannot change it. If you have registered two Bluetooth® portable players with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to it.

“Connection Method”

. . . The connection method can be switched between “From Vehicle” and “From Portable Player”.

Select the desired portable player and then select “Portable Player Info”.

- **Changing a device name**

You can change a device name. Even if you change a device name, the name registered in your portable player is not changed.

1. Select "Portable Player Info" on "Select Portable Player" screen.

2. Select "Edit" for "Device Name" on "Portable Player Information" screen.

3. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.

- **Selecting Connection method**

The connection method can be selected.

From Vehicle: Connect the audio system to the portable player.

From Portable Player: Connect the portable player to the audio system.

Select desired connection method "From Vehicle" or "From Portable Player" and then select "Save".

INFORMATION
If the connection method is set to "From Portable Player", "Auto Bluetooth* Connect" cannot be selected.

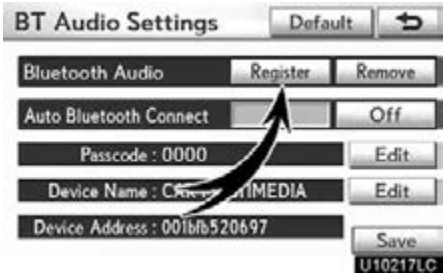
*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG.Inc.

— Setting Bluetooth® audio

The Bluetooth® audio settings can be set.

- **Registering your portable player**

1. Select "Bluetooth* Audio Setting" on "Audio Settings" screen.



2. Select "Register" of "Bluetooth* Audio" on "BT Audio Settings" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG.Inc.

3. When this screen is displayed, enter the passcode displayed on the screen into the portable player.

For the operation of the portable player, see the manual that comes with it.

If you want to cancel the entry, select "Cancel".

4. When the connection is complete, this screen is displayed.

You do not need to enter the portable player in case of using the same one.

When this screen is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try connection again.

When another Bluetooth® device is connected

If you want to disconnect it, select **"Yes"**.

INFORMATION
If the device corresponds with both Bluetooth® phone and Bluetooth® audio, register and connect the Bluetooth® phone first or a connection failure may occur when registering the Bluetooth® audio.

(a) Removing a Bluetooth® audio

1. Select "Remove" of "Bluetooth* Audio" on "BT Audio Settings" screen.

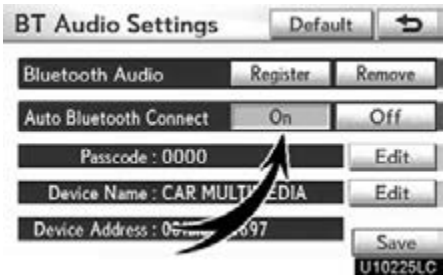
2. Select the portable player you want to delete and select "OK".

3. Select "Yes" to unregister the selected portable player.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG.Inc.

If the selected portable player is in use, this screen will appear. Select “Yes”. The system will disconnect the portable player and remove it.

(b) Connecting Bluetooth® audio AUTOMATICALLY



Select **“On”** for “Auto Bluetooth* Connect” to activate the automatic connection for the Bluetooth®. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® portable player in a condition where connection can be established. The “Auto Bluetooth* Connect” cannot be selected if the connection method is set to “From Portable Player”.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG.Inc.

When the “POWER” <“ENGINE START STOP”> switch is in ACCESSORY or ON <IGNITION ON> mode, the selected portable player will be automatically connected and the connection result is displayed.

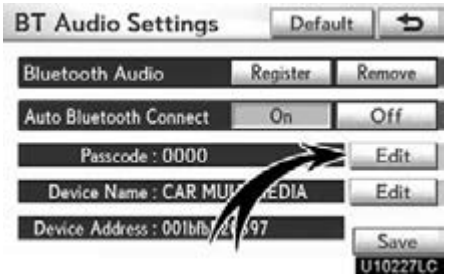
MANUALLY

When the auto connection failed or turned off, you have to connect Bluetooth® manually.

For the manual operation, see page 255.

(c) Changing the passcode

The passcode for registering your portable player on the system. You can change this to 4 to 8 digit number of your choice. The default is “0000”.



1. Select “Edit” of “Passcode” on “BT Audio Settings” screen.

2. Enter the new 4−8 digits passcode and select “OK”.

Each time you select ←, an input digit is deleted.

(d) Changing the device name

You can change a device name. Even if you change a device name, the name registered on your portable player is not changed.

1. Select “Edit” of “Device Name” on “BT Audio Settings” screen.

2. Enter the new device name and select “OK”.

INFORMATION
The device names are common between Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone. ***If you change the device name of the audio, the device name of the phone will change at same time.*** ***However, passcodes can be set separately.***

(e) Initializing the Bluetooth® audio settings

You can initialize the settings.

1. Select “Default” on “BT Audio Settings” screen.

2. Select “Yes”.

Vehicle settings — — Maintenance

When the navigation system is turned on, the “Information” screen displays when it is time to replace a part or certain components. (See page 31.)

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Vehicle”.

3. Select “Maintenance”.

- Setting maintenance information (See page 410.)
- Setting dealer (See page 411.)

(a) Maintenance information setting

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Maintenance” on the “Vehicle Settings” screen.

4. Select the desired button.

For details of each button, see “INFORMATION ITEMS” on page 410.

“Delete All”: To cancel all conditions which have been inputted.

“Reset All”: To reset the item which has satisfied a condition.

“Set Dealer”: To register dealer information. (See “ (b) Dealer setting” on page 411.)

“Dealer Info.”: To edit dealer information. (See “ (b) Dealer setting” on page 411.)

“Reminder”: When this button is selected, the indicator is illuminated. The system is set to give maintenance information with the “Information” screen. (See page 31.)

When the vehicle needs to be serviced, the button color will change to orange.

INFORMATION ITEMS

“Engine oil”: Replace engine oil

“Oil filter”: Replace engine oil filter

“Rotation”: Rotate tires

“Tires”: Replace tires

“Battery”: Replace 12−volt battery

“Brake pad”: Replace brake linings

“Wipers”: Replace wiper blades

“Coolant”: Replace engine coolant

“Brake oil”: Replace brake fluid

“Trans. fluid”: Replace transmission fluid

“Service”: Scheduled maintenance

“Air filter”: Replace air filter

“Personal”: New information items can be created separately from provided ones.

5. Input the conditions.

"Date": The next maintenance date can be input.

"Distance": The driving distance until the next maintenance check can be input.

"Delete": To cancel the date and distance conditions.

"Reset": To reset the date and distance conditions.

6. Select "OK".

The screen then returns to the "Maintenance" screen.

INFORMATION
• ***For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".***
• ***Depending on driving or road conditions, the actual date and distance may differ from the stored date and distance in the system.***

(b) Dealer setting

It is possible to register a dealer in the system. With dealer information registered, route guidance to the dealer is available.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "Maintenance" on the "Vehicle Settings" screen.

4. Select "Set Dealer".

5. If the dealer has not been registered, enter the location of the dealer in the same way as for a destination search. (See "Destination search" on page 66.)

When "Set Dealer" registration is finished, the "Dealer" screen will be displayed.

6. Select "Edit" for the item you want to change.

"Dealer": To enter the name of a dealer. (See page 412.)

"Contact": To enter the name of a dealer member. (See page 412.)

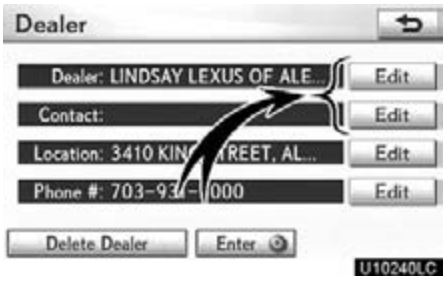
"Location": To set a location. (See page 413.)

"Phone #": To set a telephone number. (See page 413.)

"Delete Dealer": To delete the dealer information displayed on the screen.

"Enter ⊙": To set the displayed dealer as a destination. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 87.)

- **To edit "Dealer" or "Contact"**



1. Select "Edit" of "Dealer" or "Contact".

2. Enter the name using the alphanumeric keys.

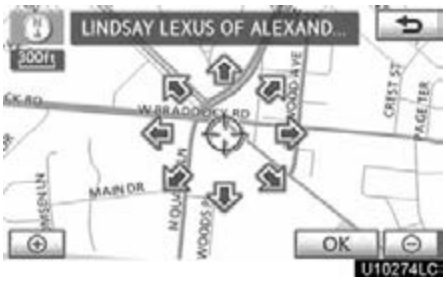
Up to 32 characters can be entered.

3. Select "OK".

The previous screen will be displayed.

- **To edit “Location”**

1. Select “Edit” of “Location”.

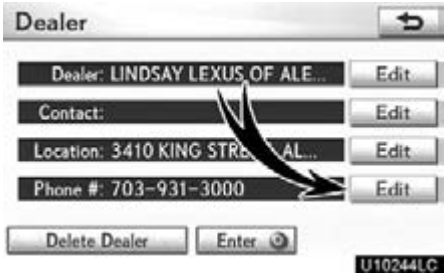


2. Select the 8 directional button to move the cursor ⌖ to the desired point on the map.

3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- **To edit “Phone #” (telephone number)**



1. Select “Edit” of “Phone #”.

2. Enter the number using number keys.

3. Select “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

— Vehicle customization

Vehicle settings can be changed.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “Vehicle Customization”

4. Select the setting to be changed. Various settings can be changed. For a list of the settings that can be changed, see the vehicle owner’s manual.

5. After changing the settings, select “Save”. A message indicating that the settings are being saved will appear. Do not perform any other operations while this message is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

When performing the customization procedure, ensure that there is sufficient ventilation in the vehicle and surrounding area. If there is insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) and inhaling them may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

INFORMATION

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, set the parking brake and put the shift lever in “P”. To avoid discharging the 12−volt battery, perform the customization procedure with the hybrid system operating <the engine running>.

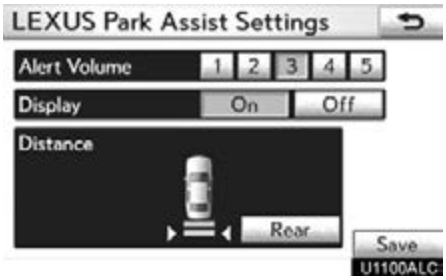
— Intuitive parking assist setting

The volume of the beeps and turning on or off of the display can be set.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “LEXUS Park Assist”.



4. Select the desired button.

5. Select “Save”.

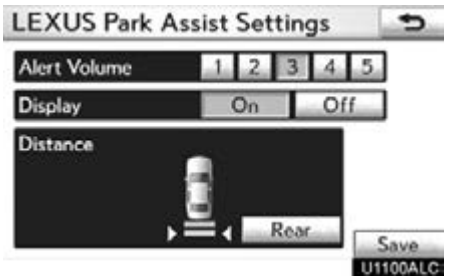
- **Setting an alert volume**

The alert volume can be adjusted.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

3. Select “LEXUS Park Assist” on the “Vehicle Settings” screen.



4. Select the desired button.

The volume has 5 levels, increasing with higher value.

5. Select “Save”.

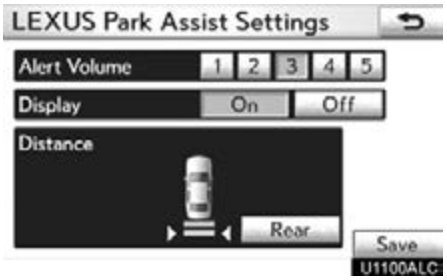
- **Setting a parking sonar display**

"On" or **"Off"** can be selected for parking sonar display.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "LEXUS Park Assist" on the "Vehicle Settings" screen.



4. Select the desired button.

5. Select "Save".

Vehicles with parking assist monitor—

Although **"Off"** is selected, if the obstacle is detected during the intuitive parking assist monitoring, the warning appears on the right top of the screen.

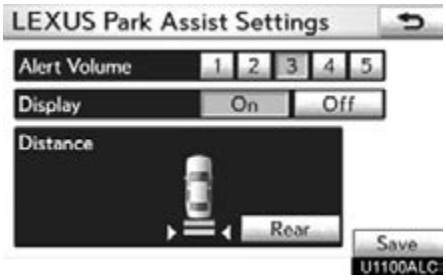
- **Setting a display and tone indication**

Back sensors display and tone indication can be set.

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Setup".

2. Select "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.

3. Select "LEXUS Park Assist" on the "Vehicle Settings" screen.



4. Select "Rear".

Selecting **"Rear"** to switch the distance for the back sensors display and tone indication, from long distance to short distance, or from short distance to long distance.

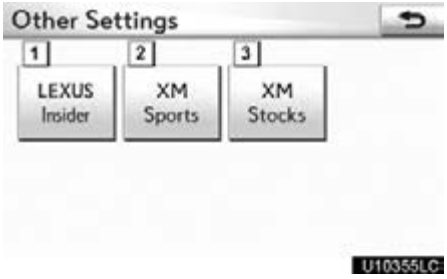
5. Select "Save".

Other settings

Used for changing settings for Lexus Insider and XM® Sports and Stocks.

1. Push the “MENU” button and select “Setup”.

2. Select “Other”.



On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

No.	Function
1	Sets Lexus Insider (See page 178.)
2	Sets XM sports (See page 167.)
3	Sets XM stocks (See page 170.)

SECTION 13

APPENDIX

- Limitations of the navigation system 420
- Map database information and updates 422

Limitations of the navigation system

This navigation system calculates the current vehicle position using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, map data, etc. However, the accurate position may not be shown depending on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances.

The Global Positioning System (GPS) developed and operated by the U.S. Department of Defense provides an accurate current vehicle position, normally using 4 or more satellites, and in some case 3 satellites. The GPS system has a certain level of inaccuracy. While the navigation system will compensate for this most of the time, occasional positioning errors of up to 300 feet (100 m) can and should be expected. Generally, position errors will be corrected within a few seconds.

When your vehicle is receiving signals from the satellites, the “GPS” mark appears at the top left of the screen.

The GPS signal may be physically obstructed, leading to inaccurate vehicle position on the map display. Tunnels, tall buildings, trucks, or even the placement of objects on the instrument panel may obstruct the GPS signals.

The GPS satellites may not send signals due to repairs or improvements being made to them.

Even when the navigation system is receiving clear GPS signals, the vehicle position may not be shown accurately or inappropriate route guidance may occur in some cases.

NOTICE

The installation of window tinting may obstruct the GPS signals. Most window tinting contains some metallic content that will interfere with GPS signal reception of the antenna in the instrument panel. We advise against the use of window tinting on vehicles equipped with navigation systems.

(a) Accurate current vehicle position may not be shown in the following cases:

- When driving on a small angled Y–shaped road.
- When driving on a winding road.
- When driving on a slippery road such as in sand, gravel, snow, etc.
- When driving on a long straight road.
- When motorway and surface streets run in parallel.
- After moving by ferry or vehicle carrier.
- When a long route is searched during high speed driving.
- When driving without setting the current position calibration correctly.
- After repeating a change of direction by going forward and backward, or turning on a turntable in the parking lot.
- When leaving a covered parking lot or parking garage.
- When a roof carrier is installed.
- When driving with tire chains installed.
- When the tires are worn.
- After replacing a tire or tires.
- When using tires that are smaller or larger than the factory specifications.
- When the tire pressure in any of the four tires is not correct.

INFORMATION

If your vehicle cannot receive GPS signals, you can correct the current position manually. For information on setting the current position calibration, see page 360.

(b) Inappropriate route guidance may occur in the following cases:

- When turning at an intersection off the designated route guidance.
- If you set more than one destination but skip any of them, auto reroute will display a route returning to the destination on the previous route.
- When turning at an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- When passing through an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- During auto reroute, the route guidance may not be available for the next turn to the right or left.
- It may take a long time to operate auto reroute during high speed driving. In auto reroute, a detour route may be shown.
- After auto reroute, the route may not be changed.
- An unnecessary U–turn may be shown or announced.
- A location may have multiple names and the system will announce one or more.
- Some routes may not be searched.
- If the route to your destination includes gravel, unpaved roads or alleys, the route guidance may not be shown.
- Your destination point might be shown on the opposite side of the street.
- When a portion of the route has regulations prohibiting the entry of the vehicle that vary by time or season or other reasons.
- The road and map data stored in your navigation system may not be complete or may not be the latest version.

After replacing a tire, implement the operation described in the "TIRE CHANGE CALIBRATION". (See page 361.)

This navigation system uses tire turning data and is designed to work with factory–specified tires for your vehicle. Installing tires that are larger or smaller than the originally equipped diameter may cause inaccurate display of the vehicle's position. The tire pressure also affects the diameter of the tires so please make sure the tire pressure of all four tires is correct.

Map database information and updates

This system uses the maps of DENSO.

© 2010 DENSO CORPORATION

© 2009 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

© 2010 Tele Atlas North America, Inc. All rights reserved. This material is proprietary and the subject of copyright protection and other intellectual property rights owned by or licensed to Tele Atlas North America, Inc. The use of this material is subject to the terms of a license agreement. You will be held liable for any unauthorized copying or disclosure of this material.

Data by infoUSA Copyright © 2009, All Rights Reserved.

© 2009 VISA Corporation

Copyright © CoStar Realty Information Inc.

The Bullseye Design is a registered trademark of Target Brands, Inc.

The building footprints and related cartographic information in this product comes with MAPMASTER digital materials.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

THIS IS A LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR YOUR COPY OF THE SPATIAL MAP DATABASE, INCLUDING LOCATION CODES AND RELATED PRODUCTS (COLLECTIVELY, THE "DATABASE"), USED IN THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM. BY USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM AND THE DATABASE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH BELOW.

LICENSE GRANT

DENSO CORPORATION ("DENSO"), as a licensed distributor of the DATABASE, grants to you a non–exclusive, non–perpetual license to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for your use in your business' internal operations and not for any other purpose. This license does not include the right to grant sub–licenses.

OWNERSHIP

The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property and neighboring rights therein are owned by Tele Atlas North America, Inc. ("TANA") and its licensors. This Agreement does not transfer any title or interest in the DATABASE, except for the license to use the DATABASE according and subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement. You shall not alter, obscure or remove any copyright notices, trademark notices or other restrictive legends relating to the DATABASE.

The DATABASE comprises confidential and proprietary information and materials of TANA. Accordingly, you shall hold the DATABASE in confidence and trust. You shall take reasonable steps to protect the DATABASE from misappropriation or misuse. You shall not extract stand–alone data from or publish any part of the DATABASE without the prior written consent of TANA and its licensors.

LIMITATIONS ON USE

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or reutilize any portion of the contents of the DATABASE, nor reproduce, copy, duplicate, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

TRANSFER

You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this AGREEMENT.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN “AS IS” AND “WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS” AND DENSO AND TANA (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON–INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY DENSO OR TANA (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

IN NO EVENT SHALL DENSO OR TANA (OR THEIR LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS) BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT OR YOUR USE OF THE DATABASE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR COSTS OF COVER, LOSS OF USE OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE, REGARDLESS OF WHETHER THE PARTY WAS ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

IN NO EVENT WILL THE TOTAL LIABILITY OF DENSO OR TANA (OR THEIR LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS) EXCEED THE AMOUNTS PAID BY YOU FOR THE DATABASE.

WARNINGS

The DATABASE comprises facts and information from government and other sources reflecting circumstances in existence before you received the DATABASE, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information relating to, among other things, neighborhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

If you are an agency, department, or other entity of the United States Government, or funded in whole or in part by the United States Government, then use, duplication, reproduction, release, modification, disclosure or transfer of this commercial product and accompanying documentation, is restricted in accordance with the LIMITED or RESTRICTED rights as described in DFARS 252.227–7014(a)(1) (JUN 1995) (DOD commercial computer software definition), DFARS 227.7202–1 (DOD policy on commercial computer software), FAR 52.227–19 (JUN 1987) (commercial computer software clause for civilian agencies), DFARS 252.227–7015 (NOV 1995) (DOD technical data – commercial items clause); FAR 52.227–14 Alternates I, II, and III (JUN 1987) (civilian agency technical data and noncommercial computer software clause); and/or FAR 12.211 and FAR 12.212 (commercial item acquisitions), as applicable. In case of conflict between any of the FAR and DFARS provisions listed herein and this Agreement, the construction that provides greater limitations on the Government's rights shall control.

Contractor/manufacturer is Tele Atlas North America, Inc., 11 Lafayette Street, Lebanon, NH 03766–1445. Phone: 603.643.0330. The DATABASE is ©1984–2010 by Tele Atlas North America, Inc. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. For purpose of any public disclosure provision under any federal, state or local law, it is agreed that the DATABASE is a trade secret and a proprietary commercial product and not subject to disclosure.

If you are an agency, department, or other entity of any State government, the United States Government or any other public entity or funded in whole or in part by the United States Government, then you hereby agree to protect the DATABASE from public disclosure and to consider the DATABASE exempt from any statute, law, regulation, or code, including any Sunshine Act, Public Records Act, Freedom of Information Act, or equivalent, which permits public access and/or reproduction or use of the Licensed Products. In the event that such exemption is challenged under any such laws, this Agreement shall be considered breached and any and all right to retain any copies or to use of the DATABASE shall be terminated and considered immediately null and void. Any copies of the DATABASE held by you shall immediately be destroyed. If any court of competent jurisdiction considers this clause void and unenforceable, in whole or in part, for any reason, this Agreement shall be considered terminated and null and void, in its entirety, and any and all copies of the DATABASE shall immediately be destroyed.

END USER TERMS

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and DENSO CORPORATION ("DENSO") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2009 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

NAVTEQ holds a non–exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service®2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this Data together with vehicle navigation system for the solely personal, non–commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time–sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. Multi–disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided by DENSO and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by DENSO, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless–connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. DENSO and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error–free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: DENSO AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON–INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: DENSO AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF DENSO OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between DENSO (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End–User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use”, and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: NAVTEQ

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS:
425 West Randolph Street,
Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End–User Terms under which this data was provided.

©2009 NAVTEQ – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency,or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

END USER NOTICE

PLEASE READ THIS NOTICE CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS NAVIGATION SYSTEM

The Point Of Interest Data ("POI" Data) in the navigation system is in part provided by infoUSA Inc. ("infoUSA"). By using the POI Data, you accept and agree to all terms and conditions set forth below.

1. Ownership

All rights, title and interest to the infoUSA POI Data shall be retained by infoUSA.

2. Limitations on use

Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or re–utilize any portion of the contents of the POI Data, nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the POI Data.

3. Transfer

You may not transfer the POI Data to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the POI Data.

4. Disclaimer of warranty

EXCEPT AS STATED HEREIN, INFOUSA MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY.

5. Limitation of liability

EITHER INFOUSA OR SUPPLIER OF POI DATA SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES MADE OR ALLEGED IN CONNECTION WITH YOUR USE OF THE POI DATA.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this information for solely personal, non–commercial purposes, and not for service bureau, time–sharing or other similar purposes. You may not modify the information or remove any copyright notices that appear on the information in any way. You may not decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this information, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose. Without limiting the foregoing, you may not use this information with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications.

No Warranty. This information is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. DENSO and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers, collectively "DENSO") make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, and DENSO expressly disclaims any warranties regarding content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, non–infringement, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this information, or that the information or server will be uninterrupted or error–free. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent, the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: DENSOSHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF ITS NATURE, ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, WHETHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE OR CONTRACTS ARISING OUT OF YOUR POSSESSION, USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF DENSO OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Indemnity. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold DENSO and its licensors (including their respective licensors, suppliers, assignees, subsidiaries, affiliated companies, and the respective officers, directors, employees, shareholders, agents and representatives of each of them) free and harmless from and against any liability, loss, injury (including injuries resulting in death), demand, action, cost, expense, or claim of any kind or character, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of or in connection with any use or possession by you of this information.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

There are two types of areas available for route guidance. In one type of area, primarily around metropolitan centers, detailed route guidance is available for the entire area. In the other type of area, all roads are displayed on the map but route guidance is limited. The navigation route might lack precision because the data (no right turns, one−way traffic, etc.) is not complete. It is still possible to reach the destination by following the arrow direction and distance as shown on the bottom left of the screen. The arrow points in the direction of the destination. The distance shown is as measured in a straight line from the current vehicle position to the destination area.

In order to provide you with as accurate map information as possible, we are always gathering information such as on road repairs and carrying out on−site investigations. However, the names of roads, streets, facilities, and their locations frequently change. In some places, construction on roads may be in progress. For that reason, information on some areas in this system might be different from the actual location.

The map database is normally updated once a year. Contact your Lexus dealer for information about the availability and pricing of an update.

- **To confirm the database version and map coverage area**

1. Push the "MENU" button and select "Info./Phone".

2. Select "Map Data".

Make sure the version of the database on this screen.

To display the disc coverage area, select **"Map Data Coverage"**. Confirm the covered area on the screen.

Contact your Lexus dealer to find out if there is a more recent update released.

- **Certification**

For vehicles sold in Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device. This Category II radiocommunication device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS−310.

L'utilisation de ce dispositif est autorisée seulement aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) il ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur du dispositif doit être prêt à accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique reçu, même si ce brouillage est susceptible de compromettre le fonctionnement du dispositif. Ce dispositif de radiocommunication de catégorie II respecte la norme CNR−310 d'Industrie Canada.

INDEX

For navigation system function, please also refer to the **“Navigation system function index”** on page 22.

Numbers/Symbols

□·□ button 10
? button 25,38
3 routes selection 89

A

A/C button 304
A/V input port 291
Activating the side monitor 327
Activation of service 159
Adding destinations 98
Address book button 25,81
Address book entries 121
Address book entry information 42
Address button 25,69
Adjusting the air conditioning system settings manually 307
Adjusting the air outlets 310
Air conditioning controls 304
Air flow control buttons 304,308
Air intake control button 304,307,309
Air outlets 308
Alphabet key 33
AM·FM button 186
Angle mark 242,286
Areas to avoid 127
Arrow screen 44,94
ASL 198
Audio button 24,27,186
Audio language 242,286
Audio settings 401
Audio/video remote controls 268
Audio/video system operating hints 294
Auto avoid traffic 357
AUTO button 304
Auto start 242
Automatic air conditioning system 306
Automatic sound levelizer 198
AUX port 201
AUX·USB button 186

B

BASS 198
Before using the rear seat entertainment system controller 272
Bluetooth® 134,363,394
Bluetooth® audio operation 252
Bluetooth® connection status 398,400
Brightness 36,292
Building information 48

C

Calendar 156
Calendar button 28
Call by call history 146
Call by dial 143
Call by phonebook 144
Call by POI 149
Call by speed dial 145
Call by voice recognition 147,152
Call on the Bluetooth® phone 143
Categories 75
CAUTION screen 30,274
CD button 186
CD changer operation 212
Cellular phone 134
CH·DISC button 186
Change icon 123
Change location 125,130
Change name 124,129
Change phone # 125
Change size 130
Changing a portable player name 403
Changing the angle 241,286
Changing the audio format 241,285
Changing the audio language 240,285
Changing the Bluetooth® audio passcode 407
Changing the Bluetooth® audio player name 408
Changing the Bluetooth® settings 395
Changing the page 239
Changing the pointer size 347
Changing the rear seat audio source 274
Changing the speaker output 275
Changing the subtitle language 240,284
Channel category 207
Chapter 251
City to search 69,74
Climate button 24,304,305
Clock button 27
Clock settings 348
Color 36,292
Command list 54,56
Compass mode screen 44,46
Connecting a Bluetooth® phone 140
Connecting a USB memory or iPod 260
Connecting Bluetooth® audio 406
Connecting Bluetooth® audio player 255
Consumption 153,154
Contrast 36,292
Coordinates button 25,86
Current position calibration 360

Current position display 38
Cursor position as a destination 39
Cursor position as an address book entry 40

D

Dealer setting 411
Defogging the windshield 310
Delete destination button 25,86
Delete personal data 347
Deletes previous destinations 114
Deleting a Bluetooth® phone 371
Deleting address book entries 126
Deleting areas to avoid 131
Deleting call history 388
Deleting destinations 86,99
Deleting home 117
Deleting preset destinations 120
Deleting previous destinations 131
Deleting the phonebook data 380
Deleting the speed dial 387
Deleting the voice tag 393
Destination Assist 161
Destination button 24,66
Destination information 43
Destination screen 25
Destination search 66
Destination search by “Address Book” 81
Destination search by “Address” 69
Destination search by “Coordinates” 86
Destination search by “Destination Assist” 80
Destination search by “Emergency” 81
Destination search by “Intersection & Freeway” 82
Destination search by “Map” 85
Destination search by “Point of Interest” 73
Destination search by “Previous Destinations” 80
Destination search by home 68
Destination search by preset destinations 68
Detailed navigation settings 114,354
Detection level of the intuitive parking assist–sensors 336
Detection range of the intuitive parking assist–sensors 337
Detour setting 100
Dialing by name 148
DISC button 186
Disc slot 186
DISP button 10
Display POI icons 106
Displaying portable player information 402
Displaying the title and name 209
Distance and time to destination 12,97
Download eDestination 164
Driving speeds 356
DSP control 198
Dual button 304
Dual map screen 44,46
DVD audio controls 237,280
DVD audio discs 232,277,279
DVD audio settings 235,282
DVD changer operation 226
DVD language 242,286
DVD player and DVD video disc information 250
DVD setup menu 242,286
DVD video controls 236,280
DVD video discs 232,250,251,277,279
DVD video settings 235,281

E

eDestination 164
Edit “Dealer” or “Contact” name 412
Edit “Location” 413
Edit “Phone #” 413
Edit route 90
Editing address book entries 122
Editing area to avoid 128
Editing home 116
Editing preset destinations 119
Editing the Bluetooth® phone 370
Editing the phonebook data 378
Editing the speed dial 386
Editing the voice tag 393
Eject button 186,214,229
Ejecting discs 214,229
Emergency button 25,81
Energy monitor 153
Enter a Bluetooth® phone 138
ENTER button 10
Estimated arrival time 97
Estimated travel time 97

F

Fan speed 307
Fan speed control buttons 304,307
Foot print map 47
Foot print map button 12
Freeway exit information screen 92
Freeway screen 44
Fuel consumption 153,154
Fuel consumption button 28
Function menu display screen 186
Function menu tab 186

G

General button 27
General settings 342
Go home button 25
GPS information 420
GPS mark 12
Guidance screen for the freeway 93
Guidance screen on the freeway 44
Guiding the route 18

H

Hands−free system 134
Heading−up 12,48
Headphone jacks 273
Help 38
HFP (Hands Free Profile) 134
Home 12,20,68,115

I

If the changer malfunctions 226,249
Incoming call display 398,399
Information about the icon 41
Information screen 28
Information/Phone button 24
Initial screen 30
Initializing the Bluetooth® audio settings 408
Initializing the Bluetooth® settings 397
Initializing the detailed phone settings 401
Initializing the phone volume settings 364
Inputting letters and numbers 33
Inserting discs 212,227
Interrupt call 152
Intersection & freeway button 25,82
Intersection guidance screen 44,93
Intuitive parking assist 334
Intuitive parking assist−sensor detection information 337
Intuitive parking assist−sensor failure warning 338
iPod compatibility 294
iPod operation 260

L

Language code 243,288
Last 5 cities 71,77
Lexus Enform 158
Lexus Insider 178
Lexus Insider settings 182
Limitations of the navigation system 420
List 34
List all categories button 75,78
List screen operation 33
Listening to satellite radio 207
Listening to the radio 201
LOAD button 186,212,227
Local POI list 108

M

Maintenance 409
Maintenance information 31
Maintenance information items 410
Maintenance information setting 410
Manage phone 365
Manual clock setting 350
Map button 25,85
Map coverage area 431
Map data button 28
Map database information 422
Map database updates 422
Map database version 431
Map icons 49
Map scale 47
Map screen 12
Map screen operation 38
MAP/VOICE button 10,38,39
Mark button 12
Marks shown on DVD video discs 250
Memory point names 124
MENU button 10
Message button 203

Microphone 49,134
MID 198
MODE button 308
MP3 221,278
Multi−information display 335

N

Names of areas to be avoided 129
Natural speech information 52
Navigation button 27
Navigation settings 114,353
North−up 12,48
Number key 33

O

Off function 12
Operating a DVD disc 232,277
OPP (Object Push Profile) 134
Orientation of the map 48
Other settings 417
Outside air mode 309
Outside rear view mirror defogging . . . 313
Outside temperature display 304

P

PAL format 292
Parental lock 242,286
Past record 153,154
Pause guidance 105
Phone button 27,28
Phonebook 144,373
Playing a Bluetooth® audio 257
Playing a disc 216,231
Playing a DVD disc 234,278
Playing a MP3/WMA disc 221,278
Playing a USB memory or iPod 262
Playing a video CD 246
Playing an audio disc 217,277
POI as a destination 109
POI category change 358
POI icons hidden 110
POI information 41
Point of interest button 25,73
POIs near the search point 78
POIs to be displayed 107
Pop−up information 362
Portable audio
players 201,252,260,401
Preset destination buttons 25
Preset destinations 16,68,118
Presetting a channel 208
Presetting a station 202
Previous destinations button 25,80
PWR·VOL knob 186

R

Radio data system 203
Radio ID 206
Radio operation 201,206,276
RAND button 220,225,259,267
RDS 203
Rear seat entertainment system
controller 271
Rear seat entertainment system
displays 271
Rear seat entertainment system
features 270
Rear system lock 344
Rear view monitor system 316
Rear view monitor system camera 318
Rear window defogger button 304
Rear window defogging 313
Receive on the Bluetooth® phone 150
Receive sports information 167
Receive stock data 170
Recirculated air mode 309
Reconnecting Bluetooth® audio
player 256
Reconnecting the Bluetooth®
phone 142
Region codes 250
Registering a Bluetooth®
phone 365,372
Registering address book entries 121
Registering areas to avoid 127
Registering home 14,115
Registering portable player 404
Registering preset destinations 16,118
Registering the phonebook data 376
Registering the speed dial 383
Registering the voice tag 391
Remote Touch 10,31
Remote Touch knob 10
Removing a Bluetooth® audio 405
Reordering destinations 98
Replacing the rear seat entertainment
system controller batteries 272
Resume guidance 106
Ring volume 363,364
Route features 104
Route guidance screen 92
Route overview 101
Route preference 103

Route preview 102
Route trace 110
Route trace–start 111
Route trace–stop 111
Route type 103
RPT button 220,225,259,267

S

Safety Connect 158
SAT button 186
Satellite tuner 206
Scale indicator 12
SCAN button 186,219,224,266,267
Screen adjustment 36,292
Screen configuration button 12
Screen layout function 359
Screen off 36,292
Screen scroll operation 39
Screen size 199,292
Screens for clock settings 349
Screens for general settings 342
Screens for navigation settings 355
Screens for voice settings 351
Search area 66
Search by category 75
Search by freeway entrance/exit 84
Search by intersection 83
Search by name 73
Search by phone # 78
Search point from along my route 76
Search point from
near a destination 77
Search point from near city center 76
Search point from near hear 76
Searching by group 238,283
Searching by title 238,282
Searching by track 249,290
Searching for a desired file 224,266
Searching for a desired folder 224,267
Searching for a desired track or
disc 219
SEEK·TRACK button 186
Select button 221,222,263,264
Select portable player 401
Selecting a Bluetooth® phone 368,372
Selecting a desired album 258
Selecting a desired disc 217,232
Selecting a desired file 222,278
Selecting a desired files or tracks 264
Selecting a desired folder 221,263
Selecting a desired track 218,258,277
Selecting a keyboard layout 344
Selecting a language 343
Selecting a play mode 263
Selecting a satellite radio channel 208
Selecting a station 203
Selecting DVD disc menu item 237
Selecting portable player
connection method 403
Selecting the bonus group 239,283
Selecting the menu number 284
Selecting the pointer shape 346
Selecting the search area 66
Sets address book 114
Sets area to avoid 114
Sets home 114
Sets preset destinations 114
Setting a feedback force 346
Setting and deleting destinations 98
Setting Bluetooth® audio 404
Setting home as the destination 20
Setting route 100
Setting the intuitive parking assist
mode 334
Setting the phonebook 373
Setting the vehicle interior
temperature 306,308
Setting the voice tag 390
Setting up the address book 120
Setting up the areas to avoid 126
Setting up the home 115
Setting up the preset destinations 117
Setup button 24
Setup operation from the rear seat 246
Setup screen 27
Show eDestination icons 166
Show free flowing traffic 358
Show on map 106
Show on map button 12
Show XM NavWeather™
information 172
Show XM® NavTraffic information 176
Side camera 326
Side monitor 322,328
Side view monitor system
initialization screen 331
Single map screen 44,45
Sort 35
Sound dynamic range 242,286
Sound icons 123
Speed dial 145,382
Speed dials settings 382
Start screen 24
Starting route from adjacent road 105
Starting route guidance 87
Steering switches 268
Street address 71
Subtitle language 242,286
Surround function 198
Switching between audio functions . . . 195
Switching the air intake control to
automatic mode 307

Switching the screens 44
Symbol key 34

T

Talk on the Bluetooth® phone 150
Talk switch 49,147,152
Telephone settings 363
Telephone switch 134
TEMP button 304,306,308
Temperature display 304,314
Time zone 349
Tire change calibration 360,361
Title 251
Tone 36,292
Tone and balance 198
Traffic announcement 205
Traffic button 205
Traffic voice guidance 352
Transferring a phone number 374
TREB 198
TUNE·FILE knob 186
Turn list screen 44,94
Turning the audio system
on and off 195
Types of intuitive parking
assist–sensors 334
TypeSeek button 203,207
Typical voice guidance prompts 95

U

Unit of measurement 345
USB memory information 294
USB memory operation 260
USB port 201

V

Vehicle button 27
Vehicle customization 414
Vehicle settings 409
Video CD 246,291
Video CD controls 248,289
Video CD settings 247,290
Viewer restrictions 251
Voice button 27
Voice command example 51,55
Voice command system 49
Voice guidance speaker 353
Voice settings 350
Voice tag 148,390
Voice volume 352,363,364

W

Weather information 172,174
Weather warnings 172,175
Windshield air flow button 310
Windshield wiper de–icer 312
Windshield wiper de–icer button 304
WMA 221,278

X

XM® indicator 12
XM® NavTraffic information arrow 176
XM® NavTraffic text information 44
XM NavWeather™ 172
XM NavWeather™ button 28
XM NavWeather™ indicator 175
XM® Satellite Radio broadcast 206
XM Sports 167
XM Sports settings 168
XM Stocks 170
XM Stocks settings 170
XM® NavTraffic icon 176
XM® NavTraffic indicator 176

Z

Zoom in button 12
Zoom out button 12